

*Министерство науки и высшего образования
Российской Федерации
АМУРСКИЙ ГОСУДАРСТВЕННЫЙ УНИВЕРСИТЕТ*

Т. А. Гудкина, М. А. Пирогова

Between the Lines

**учебное пособие
по домашнему чтению**

Благовещенск

2022

ББК 81.2 Англ – 923

Г 93

*Печатается по решению
редакционно-издательского совета
филологического факультета
Амурского государственного
университета*

Гудкина Т. А., Пирогова М. А.

Between The Lines Учебное пособие по развитию навыков пересказа художественных текстов на английском языке/Благовещенск: Амурский гос. ун-т, 2022. – 250 с.

Пособие предназначено для студентов направления подготовки 44.03.05 – Педагогическое образование (с двумя профилями подготовки), а также студентов других направлений, языковых вузов и факультетов иностранных языков, изучающих английский язык как профессиональную дисциплину.

Рецензенты: А. В. Юнг, зав. кафедрой иностранных языков Санкт-Петербургского Технологического института (технического университета), канд. филол. наук, доцент

М. В. Снитко, доцент кафедры перевода и межкультурной коммуникации Амурского государственного университета, канд. филол. наук, доцент

©Амурский государственный университет, 2022
© Гудкина Т. А., Пирогова М. А., авторы

INTRODUCTION

Between the Lines is a reading textbook for students of English as a foreign language. Proficient reading requires the coordination of a number of skills and depends on the reader's ability to select the proper strategies to solve each reading problem. This book is designed to provide students with information processing tasks in the context of a wide range of readings. Stories representing a variety of topics and styles can be read both for enjoyment and analysis. The exercises in *Between the Lines* provide practice in using both text-based knowledge and writing skills. They enable teachers to introduce readings in terms of vocabulary, grammar and ideas.

A typical unit presents a story with related commentaries and exercises which are grouped into three sections. The commentaries are referred to as **Focus on Vocabulary**, **Focus on Phrasal Verbs** and **Focus on Idioms** which are followed by respective practice exercises aimed at improving the student's command of vocabulary, idioms and phrasal verbs. The meanings of new words in the sections are provided through definitions, explanations, synonyms and examples that enable students to see how the words function in other situations or contexts and deepen their knowledge of the vocabulary. Students strengthen their understanding of a word and/or phrase by applying it/them three times in three different types of exercises. Revision exercises that follow allow for more reinforcement.

Grammar exercises provide intensive work on various grammatical structures. They can serve both as a means for practicing structures and as a basis for developing students' compositional skills.

The exercises in the final section with the focus on critical reading give students practice in understanding how the arrangement of the ideas affects the overall meaning of the story. Students are required not only to find the main idea of the story, but also answer questions about specific details in the passage and to draw conclusions based on its understanding. All pre-reading and post-reading exercises and questions contained in every unit suggest a number of opportunities for follow up discussions and can serve as a springboard for the students' writing.

The authors hope you will enjoy working with *Between the Lines* and using the exercises and activities in it. They have confidence that this textbook will be interesting, innovative and useful for both teachers and students.

UNIT I

THE EIGHTY-YARD RUN

by Irwin Shaw

PART 1

The pass was high and wide and he jumped for it, feeling it slap flatly against his hands, as he shook his hips to throw off the halfback who was diving at him. He had ten yards in the clear and picked up speed, breathing easily, feeling his thigh pads rising and falling against his legs, listening to the sound of cleats behind him, pulling away from them, watching the other backs heading him off toward the sideline, the whole picture, the men closing in on him, the blockers fighting for position, the ground he had to cross, all suddenly clear in his head, for the first time in his life not a meaningless confusion of men, sounds, speed. He smiled a little to himself as he ran, holding the ball lightly in front of him with his two hands, his knees pumping high, his hips twisting in the almost girlish run of a back in a broken field. The first halfback came at him and he fed him his leg, then swung at the last moment, took the shock of the man's shoulder without breaking stride, ran right through him, his cleats biting securely into the turf. There was only the safety man now, coming warily at him, his arms crooked, hands' spread. Darling tucked the ball in, spurted at him, driving hard, hurling himself along, all two hundred pounds bunched into controlled attack. He was sure he was going to get past the safety man. Without thought, his arms and legs working beautifully together, he headed right for the safety man, stiff-armed him, feeling blood spurt instantaneously from the man's nose onto his hand, seeing his face go awry, head turned, mouth pulled to one side. He pivoted away, keeping the arm locked, dropping the safety man as he ran easily toward the goal line, with the drumming of cleats diminishing behind him. How long ago? It was autumn then, and the ground was getting hard because the nights were cold and leaves from the maples around the stadium blew across the practice fields in gusts of wind, and the girls were beginning to put polo coats over their sweaters when they came to watch practice in the afternoons. Fifteen years. Darling walked slowly over the same ground in the spring twilight, in his neat shoes, a man of thirty-five

dressed in a double-breasted suit, ten pounds heavier in the fifteen years, but not fat, with the years between 1925 and 1940 showing in his face.

The coach was smiling quietly to himself and the assistant coaches were looking at each other with pleasure the way they always did when one of the second stringers suddenly did something fine, bringing credit to them, making their \$2,000 a year a tiny bit more secure.

Darling trotted back, smiling, breathing deeply but easily, feeling wonderful, not tired, though this was the tail end of practice and he'd run eighty yards. The sweat poured off his face and soaked his jersey and he liked the feeling, the warm moistness lubricating his skin like oil. Off in a corner of the field some players were punting and the smack of leather against the ball came pleasantly through the afternoon air. The freshmen were running signals on the next field and the quarterback's sharp voice, the pound of the eleven pairs of cleats, the "Dig, now dig?" of the coaches, the laughter of the players all somehow made him feel happy as he trotted back to midfield, listening to the applause and shouts of the students along the sidelines, knowing that after that run the coach would have to start him Saturday against Illinois.

Fifteen years, Darling thought, remembering the shower after the workout, the hot water steaming off his skin and the deep soapsuds and all the young voices singing with the water streaming down and towels going and managers running in and out and the sharp sweet smell of oil of wintergreen and everybody clapping him on the back as he dressed and Packard, the captain, who took being captain very seriously, coming over to him and shaking his hand and saying, "Darling, you're going to go places in the next two years."

The assistant manager fussed over him, wiping a cut on his leg with alcohol and iodine, the little sting making him realize suddenly how fresh and whole and solid his body felt. The manager slapped a piece of adhesive tape over the cut, and Darling noticed the sharp clean white of the tape against the ruddiness of the skin, fresh from the shower.

He dressed slowly, the softness of his shirt and the soft warmth of his wool socks and his flannel trousers a reward against his skin after the harsh pressure of the shoulder harness and thigh and hip pads. He drank three glasses of cold water, the liquid reaching down coldly inside of him, soothing the harsh dry places in his throat and belly left by the sweat and running and shouting of practice.

Fifteen years.

The sun had gone down and the sky was green behind the stadium and he laughed quietly to himself as he looked at the stadium, rearing above the trees, and knew that on Saturday when the 70,000 voices roared as the team came running out onto the field, part of that enormous salute would be for him. He walked slowly, listening to the gravel crunch satisfactorily under his shoes in the still twilight, feeling his clothes swing lightly against his skin, breathing the thin evening air, feeling the wind more softly in his damp hair, wonderfully cool behind his ears and at the nape of his neck.

Louise was waiting for him at the road, in her car. The top was down and he noticed all over again, as he always did when he saw her, how pretty she was, the rough blonde hair and the large, inquiring eyes and the bright mouth, smiling now.

She threw the door open. "Were you good today?" she asked.

"Pretty good," he said. He climbed in, sank luxuriously into the soft leather, stretched his legs far out. He smiled, thinking of the eighty yards. "Pretty damn good."

She looked at him seriously for a moment, then scrambled around, like a little girl, kneeling on the seat next to him, grabbed him her hands along his ears, and kissed him as he sprawled, head back, on the seat cushion. She let go of him, but kept her head close to his, over his. Darling reached up slowly and rubbed the back of his hand against her cheek, lit softly by a street lamp a hundred feet away. They looked at each other, smiling. Louise drove down to the lake and they sat there silently, watching the moon rise behind the hills on the other side. Finally he reached over, pulled her gently to him, kissed her. Her lips grew soft, her body sank into his, tears formed slowly in her eyes. He knew, for the first time, that he could do whatever he wanted with her.

"Tonight," he said. "I'll call for you at seven-thirty. Can you get out?"

She looked at him. She was smiling, but the tears were still full in her eyes. "All right," she said. "I'll get out. How about you? Won't the coach raise hell?"

Darling grinned. "I got the coach in the palm of my hand," he said. "Can you wait till seven-thirty?"

She grinned back at him. "No," she said.

They kissed and she started the car and they went back to town for dinner. He sang on the way home. Christian Darling, thirty-five years old, sat on the frail spring grass, greener now than it ever would be again on the practice field, looked thoughtfully up at the stadium, a deserted ruin in the twilight. He had started on the first team that Saturday and every Saturday after that for the next two years, but it had never been as satisfactory as it should have been. He never had broken away, the longest run he'd ever made was thirty-five yards, and that in a game that was already won, and then that kid had come up from the third team, Diederich, a blank-faced German kid from Wisconsin, who ran like a bull, ripping lines to pieces Saturday after Saturday, plowing through, never getting hurt, never changing his expression, scoring more points, gaining more ground than all the rest of the team put together, making everybody's All-American, carrying the ball three times out of four, keeping everybody else out of the headlines. Darling was a good blocker and he spent his Saturday afternoons working on the big Swedes and Polacks who played tackle and end for Michigan, Illinois, Purdue, hurling into huge pile-ups, bobbing his head wildly to elude the great raw hands swinging like meat-cleavers at him as he went charging in to open up holes for Diederich coming through like a locomotive behind him. Still, it wasn't so bad. Everybody liked him and he did his job and he was pointed out on the campus and boys always felt important when they introduced their girls to him at their proms, and Louise loved him and watched him faithfully in the games, even in the mud, when your own mother wouldn't know you, and drove him around in her car keeping the top down because she was proud of him and wanted to show everybody that she was Christian Darling's girl. She bought him crazy presents because her father was rich, watches, pipes, humidors, an icebox for beer for his room, curtains, wallets, a fifty-dollar dictionary. "You'll spend every cent your old man owns," Darling protested once when she showed up at his rooms with seven different packages in her arms and tossed them onto the couch.

"Kiss me," Louise said, "and shut up." "Do you want to break your poor old man?"

"I don't mind. I want to buy you presents." "Why?"

"It makes me feel good. Kiss me. I don't know why. Did you know that you're an important figure?" "Yes," Darling said gravely. "When I was waiting for you at the library yesterday two girls saw you coming and one of them said to the other, That's Christian Darling. He's an important figure. "You're a liar."

"I'm in love with an important figure." "Still, why the hell did you have to give me a forty-pound dictionary?"

"I wanted to make sure," Louise said, "that you had a token of my esteem. I want to smother you in tokens of my esteem." Fifteen years ago.

They'd married when they got out of college. There'd been other women for him, but all casual and secret, more for curiosity's sake, and vanity, women who'd thrown themselves at him and flattered him, a pretty mother at a summer camp for boys, an old girl from his home town who'd suddenly blossomed into a coquette, a friend of Louise's who had dogged him grimly for six months and had taken advantage of the two weeks that Louise went home when her mother died. Perhaps Louise had known, but she'd kept quiet, loving him completely, filling his rooms with presents, religiously watching him battling with the big Swedes and Polacks on the line of scrimmage on Saturday afternoons, making plans for marrying him and living with him in New York and going with him there to the night clubs, the theaters, the good restaurants, being proud of him in advance, tall, white-teethed, smiling, large, yet moving lightly, with an athlete's grace, dressed in evening clothes, approvingly eyed by magnificently dressed and famous women in theater lobbies, with Louise adoringly at his side.

Her father, who manufactured inks, set up a New York office for Darling to manage and presented him with three hundred accounts, and they lived on Beekman Place with a view of the river with fifteen thousand dollars a year between them, because everybody was buying everything in those days, including ink. They saw all the shows and went to all the speakeasies and spent their fifteen thousand dollars a year and in the afternoons Louise went to the art galleries and the matinees of the more serious plays that Darling didn't like to sit through and Darling slept with a girl who danced in the chorus of *Rosalie* and with the wife of a man who owned three copper mines. Darling played squash three times a week and remained as solid as a stone barn and

Louise never took her eyes off him when they were in the same room together, watching him with a secret, miser's smile, with a trick of coming over to him in the middle of a crowded room and saying gravely, in a low voice, "You're the handsomest man I've ever seen in my whole life. Want a drink?"

Nineteen twenty-nine came to Darling and to his wife and father-in-law, the maker of inks, just as it came to everyone else. The father-in-law waited until 1933 and then blew his brains out and when Darling went to Chicago to see what the books of the firm looked like he found out all that was left were debts and three or four gallons of unbought ink.

"Please, Christian," Louise said, sitting in their neat Beekman Place apartment, with a view of the river and prints of paintings by Duly and Braque and Picasso on the wall, "please, why do you want to start drinking at two o'clock in the afternoon?"

"I have nothing else to do," Darling said, putting down his glass, emptied of its fourth drink. "Please pass the whisky."

Louise filled his glass. "Come take a walk with me," she said. "We'll walk along the river."

"I don't want to walk along the river," Darling said, squinting intensely at the prints of paintings by Duly, Braque and Picasso.

"We'll walk along Fifth Avenue."

"I don't want to walk along Fifth Avenue."

"Maybe," Louise said gently, "you'd like to come with me to some art galleries. There's an exhibition by a man named Klee...."

"I don't want to go to any art galleries. I want to sit here and drink Scotch whisky," Darling said. "Who the hell hung these god dam pictures up on the wall?"

"I did," Louise said.

"I hate them."

"I'll take them down," Louise said.

"Leave them there. It gives me something to do in the afternoon. I can hate them." Darling took a long swallow. "Is that the way people paint these days?"

"Yes, Christian. Please don't drink any more."

"Do you like painting like that?"

'Yes, dear.'

"Really?"

"Really."

Darling looked carefully at the prints once more. "Little Louise Tucker. The middle - western beauty. I like pictures with horses in them. Why should you like pictures like that?"

"I just happen to have gone to a lot of galleries in the last few years ..."

PART 2

"Is that what you do in the afternoon?"

"That's what I do in the afternoon," Louise said.

"I drink in the afternoon."

Louise kissed him lightly on the top of his head as he sat there squinting at the pictures on the wall, the glass of whisky held firmly in his hand. She put on her coat and went out without saying another word. When she came back in the early evening, she had a job on a woman's fashion magazine.

They moved downtown and Louise went out to work every morning and Darling sat home and drank and Louise paid the bills as they came up. She made believe she was going to quit work as soon as Darling found a job, even though she was taking over more responsibility day by day at the magazine, interviewing authors, picking painters for the illustrations and covers, getting actresses to pose for pictures, going out for drinks with the right people, making a thousand new friends whom she loyally introduced to Darling.

"I don't like your hat," Darling said once, when she came in the evening and kissed him, her breath rich with Martinis.

"What's the matter with my hat, Baby?" she asked, running her fingers through his hair. "Everybody says it's very smart."

"It's too damned smart," he said. "It's not for you. It's for a rich, sophisticated woman of thirty-five with admirers."

Louise laughed. "I'm practicing to be a rich, sophisticated woman of thirty-five with admirers," she said. He stared soberly at her. "Now, don't look so grim, Baby. It's still the same simple little wife under the hat." She took the hat off, threw it into

a corner, sat on his lap. "See? Homebody Number One."

"Your breath could run a train," Darling said, not wanting to be mean, but talking out of boredom, and sudden shock at seeing his wife curiously a stranger in a new hat, with a new expression in her eyes under the little brim, secret, confident, knowing.

Louise tucked her head under his chin so he couldn't smell her breath. "I had to take an author out for cocktails," she said. "He's a boy from the Ozark Moumanins and he drinks like a fish. He's a Communist."

"What the hell is a Communist from the Ozarks doing writing for a woman's fashion magazine?"

Louise chuckled. "The magazine business is getting all mixed up these days. The publishers want to have a foot in every camp. And anyway, you can't find an author under seventy these days who isn't a Communist."

"I don't think I like you to associate with all those people, Louise," Darling said. "Drinking with them."

"He's a very nice, gentle boy," Louise said. "He reads Ernest Dowson."

"Who's Ernest Dowson?"

Louise patted his arm, stood up, fixed her hair. "He's an English poet."

Darling felt that somehow he had disappointed her. "Am I supposed to know who Ernest Dowson is?"

"No, dear. I'd better go in and take a bath."

After she had gone, Darling went over to the corner where the hat was lying and picked it up. It was nothing, a scrap of straw, a red flower, a veil, meaningless on his big hand, but on his wife's head a signal of something ... big city, smart and knowing women drinking and dining with men other than their husbands, conversation about things a normal man wouldn't know much about, Frenchmen who painted as though they used their elbows instead of brushes, composers who wrote whole symphonies without a single melody in them, writers who knew all about politics and women who knew all about writers, the movement of the proletariat, Marx, somehow mixed up with five-dollar dinners and the best-looking women in America and fairies who made them laugh and half-sentences immediately understood and secretly hilarious and wives

who called their husbands "Baby." He put the hat down, a scrap of straw and a red flower, and a little veil. He drank some whisky straight and went into the bathroom where his wife was lying deep in her bath, singing to herself and smiling from time to time like a little girl, padding the water gently with her hands, sending up a slight spicy fragrance from the bath salts she used.

He stood over her, looking down at her. She smiled up at him, her eyes half closed, her body pink and shimmering in the warm, scented water. All over again, with all the old suddenness, he was hit deep inside him with the knowledge of how beautiful she was, how much he needed her.

"I came in here," he said, "to tell you I wish you wouldn't call me 'Baby.' "

She looked up at him from the bath, her eyes quickly full of sorrow, half-understanding what he meant. He knelt and put his arms around her, his sleeves plunged heedlessly in the water, his shirt and jacket soaking wet as he clutched her wordlessly, holding her crazily tight, crushing her breath from her, kissing her desperately, searchingly, regretfully.

He got jobs after that, selling real estate and automobiles, but somehow, although he had a desk with his name on a wooden wedge on it, and he went to the office religiously at nine each morning, he never managed to sell anything and he never made any money.

Louise was made assistant editor, and the house was always full of strange men and women who talked fast and got angry on abstract subjects like mural painting, novelists, and labor unions. Negro short-story writers drank Louise's liquor, and a lot of Jews, and big solemn men with seamed faces and knotted hands who talked slowly but clearly about picket lines and battles with guns and lead pipe at mine-shaft-heads and in front of factory gates. And Louise moved among them all, confidently, knowing what they were talking about, with opinions that they listened to and argued about just as though she were a man. She knew everybody, condescended to no one, devoured books that Darling had never heard of, walked along the streets of the city, excited, at home, soaking in all the million tides of New York without fear, with constant wonder.

Her friends liked Darting and sometimes he found a man who wanted to get off in the corner and talk about the new boy who played fullback for Princeton, and the decline of the double wing-back, or even the state of the stock market, but for the most part he sat on the edge of things, solid and quiet in the high storm of words. "The dialectics of the situation ... The theater has been given over to expert jugglers ... Picasso? What man has a right to paint old bones and collect ten thousand dollars for them? ... I stand firmly behind Trotsky... Poe was the last American critic. When he died they put lilies on the grave of American criticism. I don't say this because they panned my last book, but..."

Once in a while he caught Louise looking soberly and consideringly at him through the cigarette smoke and the noise and he avoided her eyes and found an excuse to get up and go into the kitchen for more ice or to open another bottle.

"Come on," Cathal Raherty was saying, standing at the door with a girl, "you've got to come down and see this. It's down on Fourteenth Street, in the old Civic Repertory, and you can only see it on Sunday nights and I guarantee you'll come out of the theater singing." Raherty was a big young Irishman with a broken nose who was the lawyer for a longshoreman's union, and he had been hanging around the house for six months on and off, roaring and shutting everybody else up when he got in an argument. "It's a new play, Waiting for Lefty, it's about taxi-drivers."

"Odets," the girl with Raherty said "It's by a guy named Odets."

"I never heard of him," Darling said.

"He's a new one," the girl said.

"It's like watching a bombardment," Raherty said. "I saw it last Sunday night. You've got to see it."

"Come on, Baby," Louise said to Darling, excitement in her eyes already. "We've been sitting in the Sunday Times all day, this'll be a great change."

"I see enough taxi-drivers every day," Darling said, not because he meant that, but because he didn't like to be around Raherty, who said things that made Louise laugh a lot and whose judgment she accepted on almost every subject. "Let's go to the

movies." "You've never seen anything like this before," Flaherty said. "He wrote this play with a baseball bat."

"Come on," Louise coaxed, "I bet it's wonderful."

"He has long hair," the girl with Flaherty said. "Odets. I met him at a party. He's an actor. He didn't say a god dam thing all night."

"I don't feel like going down to Fourteenth Street," Darling said, wishing Flaherty and his girl would get out. "It's gloomy."

"Oh, hell!" Louise said loudly. She looked coolly at Darling, as though she'd just been introduced to him and was making up her mind about him, and not very favorably. He saw her looking at him, knowing there was something new and dangerous in her face and he wanted to say something, but Flaherty was there and his damned girl, and anyway, he didn't know what to say.

"I'm going," Louise said, getting her coat. "I don't think Fourteenth Street is gloomy."

"I'm telling you," Flaherty was saying, helping her on with her coat, "it's the Battle of Gettysburg, in Brooklynese."

"Nobody could get a word out of him," Flaherty's girl was saying as they went through the door. "He just sat there all night."

The door closed. Louise hadn't said good night to him. Darling walked around the room four times, then sprawled out on the sofa, on top of the Sunday Times. He lay there for five minutes looking at the ceiling, thinking of Flaherty walking down the street talking in that booming voice, between the girls, holding their arms.

Louise had looked wonderful. She'd washed her hair in the afternoon and it had been very soft and light and clung close to her head as she stood there angrily putting her coat on. Louise was getting prettier every year, partly because she knew by now how pretty she was, and made the most of it.

"Nuts," Darling said, standing up. "Oh, nuts." He put on his coat and went down to the nearest bar and had five drinks off by himself in a corner before his money ran out.

The years since then had been foggy and downhill. Louise had been nice to him, and in a way, loving and kind, and they'd fought only once, when he said he was going

to vote for Landon. ("Oh, Christ," she'd said, "doesn't anything happen inside your head? Don't you read the papers? The penniless Republican!") She'd been sorry later and apologized for hurting him, but apologized as she might to a child. He'd tried hard, had gone grimly to the art galleries, the concert halls, the bookshops, trying to gain on the trail of his wife, but it was no use. He was bored, and none of what he saw or heard or dutifully read made much sense to him and finally he gave it up. He had thought, many nights as he ate dinner alone, knowing that Louise would come home late and drop silently into bed without explanation, of getting a divorce, but he knew the loneliness, the hopelessness, of not seeing her again would be too much to take. So he was good, completely devoted, ready at all times to go any place with her, do anything she wanted. He even got a small job, in a broker's office and paid his own way, bought his own liquor.

Then he'd been offered the job of going from college to college as a tailor's representative. "We want a man," Mr. Rosenberg had said, "who as soon as you look at him, you say, 'There's a university man.' " Rosenberg had looked approvingly at Darling's broad shoulders and well-kept waist, at his carefully brushed hair and his honest, wrinkleless face. "Frankly, Mr. Darling, I am willing to make you a proposition. I have inquired about you, you are favorably known on your old campus, I understand you were in the backfield with Alfred Diederich."

Darling nodded. "Whatever happened to him?"

"He is walking around in a cast for seven years now. An iron brace. He played professional football and they broke his neck for him."

Darling smiled. That, at least, had turned out well.

"Our suits are an easy product to sell, Mr. Darling," Rosenberg said. "We have a handsome, custom-made garment. What has Brooks Brothers got that we haven't got? A name. No more."

"I can make fifty-sixty dollars a week," Darling said to Louise that night. "And expenses. I can save some money and then come back to New York and really get started here."

"Yes, Baby," Louise said.

"As it is," Darling said carefully, "I can make it back here once a month, and holidays and the summer. We can see each other often."

"Yes, Baby." He looked at her face, lovelier now at thirty-five than it had ever been before, but fogged over now as it had been for five years with a kind of patient, kindly, remote boredom.

"What do you say?" he asked. "Should I take it?" Deep within him he hoped fiercely, longingly, for her to say, "No, Baby, you stay right here," but she said, as he knew she'd say, "I think you'd better take it."

He nodded. He had to get up and stand with his back to her, looking out the window, because there were things plain on his face that she had never seen in the fifteen years she'd known him. "Fifty dollars is a lot of money," he said. "I never thought I'd ever see fifty dollars again." He laughed. Louise laughed, too.

Christian Darling sat on the frail green grass of the practice field. The shadow of the stadium had reached out and covered him. In the distance the lights of the university shone a little mistily in the light haze of evening. Fifteen years. Flaherty even now was calling for his wife, buying her a drink, tilling whatever bar they were in with that voice of his and that easy laugh. Darling half-closed his eyes, almost saw the boy fifteen years ago reach for the pass, slip the halfback, go skittering lightly down the field, his knees high and fast and graceful, smiling to himself because he knew he was going to get past the safety man. That was the high point, Darling thought, fifteen years ago, on an autumn afternoon, twenty years old and far from death, with the air coming easily into his lungs, and a deep feeling inside him that he could do anything, knock over anybody, outrun whatever had to be outrun. And the shower after and the three glasses of water and the cool night air on his damp head and Louise sitting hatless in the open car with a smile and the first kiss she ever really meant. The high point, an eighty-yard run in the practice, and a girl's kiss and everything after that a decline. Darling laughed. He had practiced the wrong thing, perhaps. He hadn't practiced for 1929 and New York City and a girl who would turn into a woman. Somewhere, he thought, there must have been a point where she moved up to me was even with me for a moment,

when I could have held her hand, if I'd known, held tight, gone with her. Well, he'd never known. Here he was on a playing field that was fifteen years away and his wife was in another city having dinner with another and better man, speaking with him a different, new language, a language nobody had ever taught him.

Darling stood up, smiled a little, because if he didn't smile he knew the tears would come. He looked around him. This was the spot. O'Connor's pass had come sliding out just to here ... the high point. Darling put up his hands, felt all over again the flat slap of the ball. He shook his hips to throw off the halfback, cut back inside the center, picked his knees high as he ran gracefully over two men jumbled on the ground at the line of scrimmage, ran easily, gaining speed, for ten yards, holding the ball lightly in his two hands, swung away from the halfback diving at him, ran, swinging his hips in the almost girlish manner of a back in a broken field, tore into the safety man, his shoes drumming heavily on the turf, stiff-armed, elbow locked, pivoted, raced lightly and exultantly for the goal line.

It was only after he had sped over the goal line and slowed to a trot that he saw the boy and girl sitting together on the turf, looking at him wonderingly.

He stopped short, dropping his arms. "I..." he said, gasping a little, though his condition was fine and the run hadn't winded him. "I - once I played here." The boy and the girl said nothing. Darling laughed embarrassedly, looked hard at them sitting there, close to each other, shrugged, turned and went toward his hotel, the sweat breaking out on his face and running down into his collar.

I. LANGUAGE FOCUS

A. VOCABULARY

Part 1

1. confusion – a situation, that has a lot of noise and action, so that it is difficult for someone to understand it or control it

There was a confusion of shouts and orders as the ship prepared to depart.

a situation in which someone wrongly thinks that a person or thing is someone or something else

To avoid confusion, the teams wore different colors.

2. stride – the speed at which you walk or run

He managed to maintain his stride.

break (your) stride (*Am E.*) – to begin moving more slowly or to stop when you are running or walking

Collins dealt with the reporters' questions without breaking stride.

3. wary – careful and worried about danger or problems

Teach children to be wary of strangers.

4. hurl oneself – to move your body through the air with speed and force

He hurled himself over the fence and ran.

5. head for/towards/back etc. – to go or travel towards a particular place

The ship was heading for Cuba.

It's about time we were heading home.

6. pivot – to turn or balance on a central point, or to make something do this

McGee pivots, and throws the ball to second base.

7. twilight – the time when day is just starting to become night

We stayed outside till twilight.

8. secure – feeling confident and certain about a situation

It was enough money to make us feel financially secure.

9. soak – to make something completely wet, or to become completely wet

If you don't take your umbrella, you're going to get soaked.

10. workout – a physical exercise session

Start your workout with some gentle stretching exercises.

11. clap – to hit smb. on their back/shoulder with your hand in a friendly way

Ben grinned and clapped me amiably on the shoulder.

12. wipe – to rub a surface with a cloth in order to remove dirt, liquid etc.

Ask the waitress to wipe off the table.

Wipe your feet before you come in.

13. slap – to put something down on a surface with force

Giles slapped his cards down on the table.

14. adhesive tape – a tape coated with a sticky substance that causes smth. to adhere, as glue

Why don't we use adhesive tape to put this note on the board?

15. nape of the neck – the back of your neck

He kissed the nape of her neck.

16. luxurious(ly) – very expensive, beautiful, and comfortable

Atlantis is one of the world's most luxurious cruise ships.

17. scramble over/around – to climb somewhere using your feet and hands

She managed to scramble over the wall.

18. grab smb. – to take hold of something in a rough or rude way

He grabs a knife and dives at the robber.

19. grin – to smile showing your teeth

Ruth grinned at him as she waved goodbye.

20. frail – thin and weak, easily damaged, especially because of being old

Grandpa looked tiny and frail in the hospital bed.

21. deserted – used about places that have not had people in them for a long time

The streets are practically deserted on Sunday nights.

22. score a goal/point/run etc. – to win a point in a sport, game, competition, or test

He has scored 12 goals so far this season.

Great cheers went up when he scored in the final minute of the game.

She scored an average of 9.9 in the test.

23. all-American – an all-American boy or girl has all the good qualities that many in the US consider typically American, e.g. being attractive and healthy, and working hard.
an all-American player is a student at a high school, college, or university in the US who has officially been called one of the best in their particular sport.

24. bob one's head – to move one's head down and back up to greet smb., or show agreement

He spoke rapidly to the girl, who bobbed her head.

25. elude – to manage to escape or hide from someone or something

She hid in the bushes to elude detection.

26. prom – a dance party for high school students at the end of a school year

The band first played together at a high school prom.

27. token (of) – something that represents a feeling of admiration and respect

He had given her the ring as a token of his love.

28. esteem – a feeling of respect and admiration for someone

She was held in high esteem by everyone on the team.

29. smother smb. – to express love for someone too much

He accused his mother of smothering him as a child.

30. casual – happening without being planned or thought about

Pete made a casual remark about Jo's hair style, and she got really mad.

not formal, or not for a formal situation

Are shorts appropriate at a casual party?

doing something sometimes, but not often or regularly

His casual attitude toward work really irritates me.

31. dog smb. – to cause trouble for someone over a long period of time

He has been dogged by persistent back problems.

to follow someone closely in a way that annoys them

Photographers dogged the princess all her adult life.

32. present with – to give smth. to smb, especially at a formal or official occasion

The Golden Globe Awards will be presented January 18.

to cause something such as a problem, threat, or opportunity

Heavy rains have presented new difficulties for relief workers.

33. accounts – an arrangement that you have with a bank to pay in or take out money

I'd like to deposit this check into my account.

34. speakeasy – a place that illegally served alcoholic drinks in the US during Prohibition (=the period from 1920 to 1933 when the sale of alcohol was illegal)

You know how many speakeasies in this one county?

35. matinees – a performance of a play or movie in the afternoon

Bill drove Lily to the theatre for the Monday matinee.

PRACTICE

1. Write the word closest in meaning to the following groups of words.

1. catch, clutch, grasp, seize _____
2. escape, ditch, evade, flee, avoid _____
3. bewilderment, disorientation; chaos, clutter, commotion _____
4. careful, cautious, considerate, attentive _____
5. hang, rotate, turn, revolve around _____
6. love, affection, appreciation, respect, reverence _____
7. breakable, weak, sick, vulnerable, fragile _____
8. indication, remembrance, evidence, note _____
9. occasional, odd, irregular, uncertain _____
10. damp, drench, immerse, moisten, wet, penetrate _____

2. Choose the word that best completes each sentence.

1. There is _____ in the public mind between psychology and psychiatry.
A. indication B. confusion C. appreciation D. esteem
2. Please, accept this small gift as _____ of my affection.
A. elusion B. respect C. token D. clutter
3. The disease cannot be spread by _____ contact.
A. casual B. frail C. fragile D. careful
4. The floods _____ the rug and ruined it.
A. grabbed B. clutched C. evaded D. soaked
5. One of the men was _____ and bundled into a car.
A. grabbed B. rotated C. deserted D. pivoted
6. Jones _____ the police for six weeks.
A. seized B. eluded C. drenched D. wiped
7. He is _____, but still manages to walk with a stick.
A. frail B. careful C. wary D. casual
8. Teachers feel that they have fallen in public _____ in recent years.
A. remembrance B. commotion C. esteem D. token
9. He was _____ of putting too much trust in her.
A. secure B. vulnerable C. irregular D. wary
10. She _____ on her heels and marched out of the room.
A. pivoted B. immersed C. escaped D. avoided

3. Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

wary	soak	esteem	frail	token
confusion	pivoted	eluded	casual	grab

1. He brought her some flowers as a _____ of his thanks.
2. The museum is of great interest, both to experts and to _____ visitors.
3. She's getting on for 90 and is really _____.
4. You should be _____ of trusting someone like that.
5. Jenny _____ the toy car from her little brother.
6. Michel stopped, _____ and walked back in.
7. She tried to remember the shape of his face, but it _____ her.
8. The clothes were left to _____ in the soapy water.
9. _____ over the new regulations prompted the government to distribute information packs.
10. I know the high _____ you feel for our colleague here.

4. Choose the word closest in meaning to a boldfaced word.

1. **esteem** A. rotation B. evidence C. appreciation D. escape
2. **token** A. indication B. affection C. respect D. clutter
3. **wary** A. vulnerable B. careful C. uncertain D. weak
4. **confusion** A. reverence B. note C. remembrance D. disorientation
5. **soak** A. evade B. moisten C. seize D. hang
6. **pivot** A. revolve B. immerse C. clutch D. ditch
7. **frail** A. attentive B. odd C. sick D. irregular
8. **grab** A. clutch B. damp C. turn D. avoid
9. **casual** A. vulnerable B. fragile C. occasional D. considerate
10. **elude** A. catch B. penetrate C. grasp D. flee

Part 2

1. quit – to leave a job or school permanently

His decision to quit international football has shocked everyone.

2. pick smb. – to choose someone or something from a group,

The following season he was picked for the national squad.

3. sophisticated – understanding a lot about culture, fashion, and the modern world

Consumers are getting more sophisticated and more demanding.

complicated and advanced in design

Eye operations often involve the use of highly sophisticated equipment, such as lasers.

4. sober – extremely serious

Much sober thought is required to make the right choice

5. brim – the part of a hat that sticks out from the base

Sandison bought a very fine pale grey hat with a wide, flat brim and a white hatband.

6. chuckle – to laugh quietly, especially in a private or secret way

As she read her book, she chuckled softly.

7. associate – to make a connection between one thing or person and another

I always associate summer with travel.

to spend time with someone

While she was in Paris she associated with many well-known artists.

8. pat (the arm) – to touch someone gently several times with a flat hand

He patted the girl on the shoulder in an attempt to comfort her.

9. hilarious – extremely funny

Lynn found the whole situation hilarious.

10. desperate – willing to change a bad situation, and not caring about danger

The prisoners made a desperate attempt to escape.

needing or wanting something very much

By then I was so broke I was desperate for a job.

11. mural – a large painting done on a wall

A mural was 72 feet long and 7 feet tall.

12. solemn – involving serious behavior or serious attitudes

His face looked strangely solemn.

13. condescend to smb. – to behave patronizingly towards other people

Try not to condescend to the children.

14. devour – to read, watch, or listen to something with a lot of interest or enthusiasm

He was already devouring detective fiction as a young child.

15. decline – a decrease in the quality, quantity, or importance of something

We can expect a further decline in job vacancies.

16. state – the physical or mental condition that someone or something is in

Given the general state of his health, it may take him a while to recover from the operation.

There are fears for the state of the country's economy.

When we bought the house, it was in a terrible state.

17. stock market – a place where stocks and shares are bought and sold

But these days came to a swift end with the stock market crash on Black Tuesday.

18. pan – to criticize someone or something very strongly

The critics panned his first play.

19. longshoreman's union – (американский союз докеров)

20. roar – shout at the same time because they are angry or excited

It was a performance that had spectators roaring in appreciation.

21. coax – to gently persuade someone to do something

Rescuers told how they coaxed a man out of a suicide attempt.

22. gloomy – dark in a sad, frightening, or unpleasant way

The bar was gloomy and smelled of stale cigar smoke.

23. vote for/in favor of/against – to support a person or a particular plan

I voted for the Labor candidate in the last election.

53% of Danes voted in favor of the Maastricht treaty.

They voted to ban smoking in the building.

24. inquire – to ask someone for information

'Why are you doing that?' the boy inquired.

I am writing to inquire about your advertisement in The Times.

25. nod – to move your head up and down showing you agree with or understand smth.

The committee nodded their heads in agreement.

26. custom-made – made, built etc for a particular person

We provide custom made boxes, cardboard boxes, custom boxes, shipping cartons.

27. garment – a piece of clothing

She pulled the garment on and zipped it up.

The garment industry has grown by 20% in this area in the past five years.

28. plain – very clear, and easy to understand or recognize

It was plain that Giles was not going to agree.

29. outrun – to run faster or further than someone

Can a man outrun a horse?

30. gasp – to breathe in a way that can be heard, esp. because you have difficulty breathing

Brendan climbed slowly, gasping for breath.

PRACTICE

1. Write the word closest in meaning to the following groups of words.

1. leave, abandon, cease, drop, resign, retire _____
2. amusing, humorous, merry, happy, jolly _____
3. absorb, enjoy, relish; swallow, consume, eat, gobble _____
4. criticize, blame, condemn, denounce _____
5. costume, dress, uniform, robe, attire, apparel _____
6. complex, advanced, elaborate; intelligent, knowledgeable _____
7. ask, query, question, request information _____
8. obvious, apparent, evident, comprehensible, visible _____
9. serious, thoughtful, composed, level-headed, reasonable _____
10. combine, connect, conjoin, correlate, group, link _____

2. Choose the word that best completes each sentence.

1. Everyone at the party was _____ and well-educated.
A. inquired B. devoured C. sophisticated D. abandoned
2. You should read this book - it's _____ .
A. obvious B. desperate C. reasonable D. hilarious
3. She _____ after only six months in the job.
A. associated B. declined C. quit D. panned
4. He's a _____, thoughtful, intelligent guy.
A. apparent B. gloomy C. solemn D. sober
5. The advantages were _____ to see.
A. plain B. jolly C. complex D. hilarious
6. Only two _____ may be taken into the changing room.
A. garments B. tokens C. notes D. proms
7. How do humans _____ these seemingly opposed ideas?
A. devour B. immerse C. associate D. elude
8. In no time at all they had _____ the entire loaf.

- A. panned B. devoured C. denounced D. ceased
9. The movie was _____ by the critics.
- A. inquired B. panned C. correlated D. dropped
10. I am writing to _____ about your advertisement in The Times.
- A. condemn B. conjoin C. penetrate D. inquire

3. Complete each item with a word from the box.

garment	sober	plain	devoured	sophisticated
hilarious	quit	associate	panned	inquire

- The missile has a _____ guidance system.
- He _____ science fiction books.
- I _____ smoking three years ago.
- Shoppers tend to _____ certain brand names with high quality.
- I need to clean my winter _____.
- I went to see Professor Dandavate, a _____ and respected academic.
- Several people phoned the personnel department to _____ about the position.
- Our attempts at dancing were _____ - we all kept tripping over each other.
- Barnes _____ the show in Thursday's "Times."
- The markings along the route are quite _____.

4. Choose the word closest in meaning to a boldfaced word.

- hilarious** A. amusing B. elaborate C. advanced D. apparent
- sophisticated** A. humorous B. complex C. evident D. reasonable
- pan** A. abandon B. consume C. criticize D. link
- plain** A. jolly B. obvious C. visible D. thoughtful
- quit** A. blame B. gobble C. connect D. cease
- devour** A. absorb B. denounce C. conjoin D. drop
- garment** A. robe B. evidence C. group D. custom

8. **sober** A. merry B. intelligent C. serious D. comprehensible
9. **inquire** A. resign B. correlate C. condemn D. ask
10. **associate** A. relish B. retire C. question D. combine

Sport Vocabulary

1. **halfback** – in American football, the player next to the fullback and behind the front line at the start of a game

Halfback Matthew Head has finally returned from injury but coach has not confirmed he will start.

2. **to dive at** – if a player dives, they deliberately fall to the ground in order to pretend that an opponent has made them fall

3. **to tuck in the ball** – to hold it tightly

He had the presence of mind to tuck in the ball and gain ten yards before he was brought down.

4. **drive** – to run with the ball towards the goal in sports such as basketball and American football

He drove the ball into the corner of the net.

5. **scrimmage** – a fight

After couple of minutes the players started awful scrimmage.

6. **cleats** – a piece of metal or hard plastic fixed to the bottom of a shoe in order to prevent it from slipping on the ground

Polar Cleats can be fitted on almost any size boots & shoes for winter walking.

7. **stringer** – a safety player

8. **punt** – to drop a ball from your hands and kick it, especially in the game of American football

McGee punted the ball forty yards.

9. **quarterback** – a player in the sport of American football who gives instructions to other players

Quarterback play is always important in deciding an NFL winner, but especially so in this opener.

10. **squash** – a game in which two players use rackets to hit a small ball against a wall. You play squash on an indoor area called a court.

She always says she is into sport. In fact, she just plays squash.

B. PHRASAL VERBS

Part 1

1. throw off – to escape from someone who is chasing you

He threw off his pursuers and fled across the border.

2. pull away – to move ahead of a competitor by going faster or being more successful

He is pulling away from the other runners.

3. head off – to prevent smb. from going somewhere by getting in front of them

Let's try and head them off before they cross the bridge.

4. close in on smb. – to move nearer to someone, especially in order to surround them

The police finally closed in on Connors and captured him.

5. fuss over smb. – to give a person or animal a lot of attention

Everyone was fussing over the new baby.

6. call for – to meet someone at their home in order to take them somewhere

I'll call for you at 8 o'clock.

7. show up – to arrive in a place where people are expecting you

We didn't think Austin would show up.

8. get out (of) – to leave a room, building, college

You ought to get out into the fresh air.

All US tourists and journalists are being advised to get out of the country as soon as possible.

9. set up – to start something such as a business, organization, or institution

The group plans to set up an import business.

10. sit through – to stay until the end of something, esp. if you are not enjoying it

If I have to sit through one more boring meeting, I think I'll scream.

PRACTICE

1. Match phrasal verbs with their definitions.

- | | |
|--------------------|---|
| 1. close in on smb | a. to move closer in order to catch smb. or smth. |
| 2. throw off | b. to move away from other people in a race or game |
| 3. head off | c. to arrive to collect someone |
| 4. pull away | d. to pay too much attention |

- | | |
|------------------|--|
| 5. sit through | e. to flee from smb. |
| 6. fuss over | f. to stop smb. moving |
| 7. set up | g. leave a place |
| 8. show up | h. to stay until the end of a meeting |
| 9. call for | i. to arrive because smb. is expecting you |
| 10. get out (of) | i. to arrange or manage smth. |

2. Replace the underlined words with suitable phrasal verbs.

1. The police stopped them at the cross street.
2. Somehow he managed to help them evade.
3. We don't have to get the bus tonight – James is coming to collect us.
4. Chicago moved away from the rivals in the third quarter to win.
5. I thought you'd never arrive to see me!
6. The tiger was trying to catch a deer for the kill.
7. We had to stay at a three-hour meeting this morning.
8. Grandma's always paying a lot of attention to the kids.
9. When he left college he started to look for a job.
10. The company has established a new branch in Atlanta.

3. Complete the sentences with the appropriate phrasal verbs.

1. Enemy troops began to _____ _____ _____ at dawn.
2. He appears to _____ _____ his rivals in the election campaign.
3. We were hoping for a full team today but only five players have _____ _____ .
4. Rebels have _____ _____ an independent state within the country.
5. I will _____ _____ you on the way to the bank.
6. We'll have to _____ her _____! She shouldn't go there alone!
7. Radcliff _____ _____ 200 meters before the finish.
8. The whole building was on fire - we were lucky to _____ _____ alive!
9. I don't think I can _____ _____ another hour of this movie.
10. She's always _____ _____ details.

Part 2

1. take over – to get control of or become responsible for something

Jack is supposed to take over for Carmen while she's on maternity leave.

2. take smb. out – to take someone as your guest to a restaurant, cinema, club etc.

We're taking my folks out for a meal next week.

3. get in(to) an argument, fight, politics, etc. – to become involved in (doing) smth.

I don't want to get into an argument with you.

4. gain on – to start getting closer to the person, car etc. that you are chasing

Hurry up! They're gaining on us!

5. give up – to stop trying to do something or working at something

I looked everywhere for the keys – finally, I just gave up.

6. turn out – to happen in a particular way, esp. one that you did not expect

It was a difficult time, but eventually things turned out all right.

7. break out in spots/a rash/a sweat etc. – spots etc. appear on your skin

My whole body broke out in a sweat.

PRACTICE

1. Match phrasal verbs with their definitions.

- | | |
|--------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. break out | a. invite people out |
| 2. take over | b. to stop trying to do smth |
| 3. gain on | c. to get involved |
| 4. give up | d. to happen |
| 5. take out | e. to be responsible for smth |
| 6. turn out | f. to move closer to a person |
| 7. get in | g. to appear |

2. Replace the underlined words with suitable phrasal verbs.

1. His son will control the business.
2. To my surprise, it happened that I was wrong.
3. They abandoned without a fight.

4. The Socialists are becoming closer to the Conservatives in the opinion polls.
5. I had a painful rash.
6. She was starting to become involved in politics.
7. We are inviting Sabina for dinner.

3. Complete the sentences with the appropriate phrasal verbs.

1. The firm has been _____ by an American conglomerate.
2. I _____. Tell me what the answer is.
3. He promised to _____ me _____ for dinner on Friday evening.
4. As it _____, he passed the exam quite easily
5. I was terrified. My hands were shaking and I _____ in a sweat.
6. How did you first _____ script writing?
7. _____ him! He's approaching the road!

C. IDIOMS

1. in the clear – free of anything that makes moving or seeing difficult

The plane climbed above the clouds and was flying in the clear.

2. pick up speed /steam – to go faster

The train was gradually picking up speed.

3. go awry – to not happen in the way that was hoped or planned

My carefully laid plans had already gone awry.

5. Dig now, dig! = Come on!

4. take smth./smb seriously / badly, etc. – consider smth. or smb. in a particular way

I was joking, but he took me seriously.

6. go places – to start becoming successful in your life

William is a young man who is definitely going places.

7. let go of smb./ smth. – to stop holding someone or something/ release

Let go! That hurts.

8. raise hell – to make a lot of noise or trouble

Young people were getting drunk and raising hell.

9. get smth. in the palm of one's hand – to have complete power over someone

He had the audience in the palm of his hand.

10. gain ground – to become more successful than someone you are competing with

The anti-smoking lobby has steadily gained ground in the last decade.

Martin also gained ground on Gordon, finishing sixth and moving within 87 points.

11. play tackle and end – to take hold of someone and push them to the ground

Cody is a high-motor player with the versatility to play tackle and end.

12. take advantage of – to use a situation to get what you want

Moss took advantage of the defender's mistake to score a goal.

13. as solid as a stone – strong enough not to break or become damaged easily

She was only 12 yet always wore a sparkling smile and had a faith that was as solid as a stone.

14. take one's eyes off smb. – to stop looking at someone or something

She only took her eyes off the child for a moment.

15. blow one's brains out – to kill or badly injure someone by hitting their head hard

Jake killed Mike by blowing his brains out.

1. Complete the sentences with the idioms in the box.

in the clear	let go of
raise hell	go places
take advantage of	take one's eyes off
gain ground	picked up speed

1. The kids can go in the den and _____ without bothering us.
2. Ann looked so beautiful no one could _____.
3. Jack passed the ball to Tim, who was _____ and ran for a touchdown.
4. You should definitely _____ a chance to study abroad.
5. Nick's the kind of guy who could really _____.
6. As they _____ along the main road it was already 3 a.m.
7. The guard _____ the lead, and the dog lunged forward.
8. It was feared that the extreme right would _____ in the election.

Part 2

1. make believe – to pretend or imagine that something is true when it is not

I tried to make believe she was happy, but knew deep down it wasn't true.

2. make friends (with) – to become friendly with people

Jenny has always found it easy to make friends at school.

The children soon made friends with the kids next door.

3. have a foot in both camps – to support or belong to two different groups

He had a foot in both camps, making donations to candidates in both parties.

4. make smb. captain/leader, etc. – to give smb. a new job or position in a group, organization etc.

He was made mayor in 1998.

5. on and off – sometimes but not regularly

She's been taking drugs on and off since she was 16.

6. make up one's mind – to have a decision about smth.

I like both shirts. I can't make up my mind which one to buy.

7. get a / the word out of smb. – obtain information

Could you ask current employees why they work here and get the word out of what they like.

8. make the most of smth. – to gain the greatest possible advantage from smth.

Charming and friendly, she will help you make the most of your visit.

9. Nuts! – used to emphasize that something bad or annoying has happened

Nuts! Now we're going to be late for the movie.

10. in a way – to some extent

In a way it was one of our biggest mistakes.

11. make sense – to have a clear meaning and be easy to understand

to be a sensible thing to do

Read this and tell me if it makes sense.

It makes sense to save money while you can.

12. pay one's (own) way – to pay yourself for everything that you want

Sofia worked to pay her way through college.

13. high point – an especially good part of an activity or event

The visit to the ancient capital city was one of the high points of the tour.

PRACTICE

1. Complete the sentences with the idioms from the box.

on and off	pay their way	made up your mind
high point	make believe	get a word out of
in a way	make the most of	had a foot in both camps

1. The children like to _____ that they live in a castle.
2. Have you _____ which college you want to go to?
3. We've only got one day in Paris, so we'd better _____ it.
4. Their win over old rivals Manchester United was the _____ in their season.
5. Your children grow up and they start to _____.
6. He's been smoking for 10 years now, _____.
7. With an Indian father and an English mother she _____.
8. I know it was Ben's fault that he didn't win, but I feel sorry for him _____.
9. I could not _____ the nurses. They didn't say anything about my condition.

2. Complete the sentences with the verbs *make* and *do*.

1. You've _____ a fantastic job of decorating the room.
2. You can _____ a lot of money playing the stock market.
3. They _____ us a proposition not to pay transport costs.
4. Can you _____ something about that noise?
5. Why did she do a thing like that? It doesn't seem to _____ sense.
6. Don't _____ anything until we get there.
7. The kids complain that they have nothing to _____ there.
8. Julia's been busy _____ plans for her wedding.
9. Her family moved a lot, and it wasn't always easy to _____ friends.
10. I want time to _____ some reading.
11. If we don't _____ it on time, start without us.
12. She was _____ head of the department after Mr. Johnson retired.

D. WORD STUDY

FAST ▪ **QUICK** ▪ **RAPID** ▪ **SWIFT**

1. fast – moving or travelling fast

The plane was flying fast and low.

We must go faster or we'll be late

describing cars, trains, planes, etc. that can go fast

Boeing's new plane is faster than anything else they produced.

able to do something quickly; happening in a short time:

I'm usually quite a fast learner.

Don't talk so fast, I'm trying to write down what you say.

The survivors needed help fast.

describing a process of change or improvement that happens fast

Things are changing fast in the communications industry

2. quick(ly) – moving or travelling fast, especially for a short distance

Richard quickly ran down the stairs.

Come quick, there's been an accident.

saying that smth. happens quickly or so. does smth. quickly

Everything happened very quickly, I just got confused.

He put the phone down quickly.

He is a quick learner.

describing a fast movement or physical action.

Harold greeted us with a quick nod of the head.

describing an action, process, piece of work etc. that is done very

quickly and without delay

I had to make a quick decision.

3. rapid – very fast with short repeated movements or sounds

She could hear rapid footsteps approaching.

describing an action, process etc. that is done extremely quickly

rapid decision / calculation / response

Having read the message, I came to a rapid decision.

describing a process of change or improvement that happens fast

We are seeing a rapid growth in the use of the Internet.

describing a course of study that you do more quickly than usual

The college offers a rapid program of training for librarians.

4. swift – used in literature meaning moving fast with a continuous movement

We had to steer our ship through the swift currents of the Bering Straits.

used in writing meaning very fast with one quick movement

Garth knocked him unconscious with one swift blow to the head.

describing an action, process etc. that is done or made immediately

swift reaction / reply / response / denial etc.

My critical remarks brought a swift reaction from Bruce.

describing a process of change or improvement that happens very quickly
and without interruption

Swift fashion changes mean that the shop has to change its stock every six to eight weeks.

Complete the sentences with the appropriate word.

1. I'll just take a _____ shower first.
2. _____ political changes have bred the economic crisis.
3. Nile is a _____ river.
4. The patient often develops a fever and breathing becomes _____.
5. She's very _____ and able -- seems to pick things up in no time.
6. Dean always loved _____ cars and expensive clothes.
7. He made a _____ calculation in his head and decided that \$1200 was a fair price.
8. Don't drive so _____ - there's ice on the road.
9. Don't make any _____ movements, or you'll scare the rabbit.
10. Progress in the investigation so far has been _____.
11. We stopped to have a _____ look at the church.
12. You'll have to be _____ - we don't have much time.
13. Prices aren't rising as _____ as they were a year ago.
14. Their victory was _____ and decisive.
15. Access to the Internet is _____ becoming a necessity.

16. How _____ can you get the job done?
17. My letter received a _____ reply.
18. If the fire broke out in the warehouse it would spread very _____.
19. We need a _____ response from the government.
20. Even lowering the price won't guarantee a _____ sale.
21. The patient made a _____ recovery.

THROW ▪ TOSS ▪ HURL ▪ FLING

1. throw – to use your hand to send an object through the air

I'll throw the ball and you try to catch it.

to throw a ball when playing a sport or game

He threw the ball so hard that it went over their head.

2. toss – to throw something somewhere gently or in a slightly careless way

The fire was started when a passing motorist carelessly tossed a cigarette out of his car.

She crumpled the letter and tossed it into the fire.

to throw a flat object upwards so that it goes high in the air

We couldn't decide which movie to go to, so we tossed a coin.

3. hurl – to throw something violently or with great force

Children were hurling snowballs at one another.

4. fling – to throw something quickly and with a lot of force

He pulled the knife from her hand and flung it out of the window.

People cheered and flung their hats into the air.

to throw or move something roughly and carelessly

He flung his coat over the back of a chair.

Complete the sentences with the appropriate word.

1. Some kids were _____ stones at the windows.
2. She _____ her coat onto the bed and sat down.
3. He runs after the ball and _____ it back to the pitcher in one smooth movement.
4. We _____ a coin to see who would go first.

5. He _____ his shirt to someone in the crowd.
6. Could you _____ me my keys?
7. He _____ a chair across the set, smashing lamps and vases.
8. We _____ him the safety rope.
9. Some demonstrators began _____ bricks at the police.
10. The hot dog tasted funny, so I _____ it.
11. When he gave her the tickets she ripped them up and _____ them at him.
12. We stood on the bank and _____ bread to the ducks.

PURPOSE ▪ AIM ▪ GOAL ▪ MISSION ▪ OBJECTIVE ▪ TARGET

1. purpose – aim / function; something, that you intend to achieve

The protection of children is the primary purpose of this legislation.

The purpose of this meeting is to elect a new chairman.

Troops were sent solely for / with the purpose of assisting refugees.

accomplish / achieve / fulfill / serve a purpose

We delete the data once it has served its purpose.

2. aim – something you are trying to achieve by a plan, action, or activity

The underlying aim of this report is to ensure that another accident never happens.

We visit schools with the aim of getting young people interested in the theatre.

achieve / fulfill / pursue / set your aims

The group was committed to achieving its aims through peaceful means.

3. goal – something that a person or organization or country hopes to achieve

in the future, even though it might take a long time

Our goal is to provide a good standard of medical care.

long-term goal/short-term goal

The company's long-term goal is to become a leader in the home computer market.

set / establish a goal || achieve / reach / attain / pursue goals

You should set goals for yourself at the beginning of each school year.

4. mission – an aim that is very important to a person or organization; task

Helping homeless people was Gina's mission in life.

It is the international community's mission to end terrorism.

5. objective – something that you plan to achieve, especially in business or work

The principal objective of the department is to identify market opportunities.

long-term / short term / clear / ultimate / main objectives

The degree program has two main objectives.

accomplish / achieve / fulfill meet / pursue / satisfy objectives

The department needs more money to fulfill its objectives.

6. target – the exact result that a person or organization intend to achieve by doing smth.

exceed / set / meet / reach a target

They are setting a target of 2,000 new members.

Not many states will meet their targets for energy conservation.

sales target – the amount of something you want to sell

The idea is helping staff to achieve their sales targets.

Complete the sentences with the appropriate word.

1. My main _____ on this course is to gain confidence.
2. He came here with the _____ of carrying out the attack.
3. The company achieved its sales _____ for the month.
4. She feels her _____ in life is to help poor people.
5. Oil production was 15 per cent below _____.
6. His ultimate _____ was to set up his own business.
7. We need to clarify the aims and _____ of the project.
8. The _____ of conducting a business is to make money.
9. I flew to California with the _____ of finding a job.
10. The team has been successful in achieving challenging _____.
11. The company pays bonuses to workers who exceed production _____.
12. The _____ of the research is to find new food sources.

13. Our short-term _____ is to earn enough money to keep the business going.
14. The company's main _____ is to increase sales overseas.
15. What is the _____ of your visit?
16. He vowed to achieve certain _____ before the end of his presidency.
17. His _____ was to negotiate a ceasefire.
18. I set myself a _____ of learning 20 new words each week.
19. The _____ of this project is to help patients to be more independent.
20. The report focused on three of the business's _____.

▪ **GET** ▪

1. get about : to spread

News got about that the local radio station was closing down.

2. get across : to explain clearly, to make one's ideas clearly

A good speaker can get his ideas across to his audience without much effort.

The new commercial gets across very well.

3. get around : to go or travel to different places:

We had to use public transport to get around.

4. get at smth. : to try to say smth. hint at smth.

Do you see the point I'm getting at?

5. get away : to go on vacation

Are you going to get away this summer?

6. get away with smth. : to not be punished when you have done something wrong

The kid was kicking me, and his mother just let him get away with it!

7. get by : to have enough money to buy the things you need

He only earns just enough to get by.

8. get down to smth. : to start a serious work on smth

It's time you got down to your studies or the other students will leave you behind.

9. get in : to enter or go inside smth

They all got in the car and drove it off.

 : to arrive

What time does your train get in?

10. get off : to leave a bus, train, plane, etc. that you are traveling in
You can ask the driver where you should get off.

 : to leave a place, depart
We'll try and get off straight after lunch.

The plane didn't get off on time.

11. get on : to have friendly relationship with smb.

Do you get on with all the people you work with?

 : to be successful in your job
You'll have to work hard if you want to get on.

 : to enter a vehicle (a bus, train, plane)

We got on the train at Lime Street station.

12. get out (of) : to leave or go out of a place (car, lift, room etc.)

I wish I could get out of this meeting. I'm so busy!

 : to avoid the responsibility or duty

She is not really ill; she's just trying to get out of taking the English test.

13. get over : to recover from illness, shock, etc.

He didn't go out as he was still getting over the flu.

14. get through : to manage to deal with an unpleasant experience

I was so embarrassed. I don't know how I got through the rest of the dinner.

 : to do an amount of work

We got through half the application forms this morning.

 : to be successful in a test or competition

I finally managed to get through my driving test.

Complete the sentences with the correct particle.

1. He says he'll never get _____ losing her.
2. On days like today I just want to get _____ from it all.
3. I couldn't possibly get _____ on 500\$ a month.
4. How did the burglars get _____? Did they break the windows?
5. The three children get _____ very well together.
6. He got _____ the truck and drove off.

7. Your bike's got a flat tire. You'd better get _____ and walk.
8. They have repeatedly broken the law and got _____ it.
9. The bus stopped and three people got _____ it.
10. I'm scared. Let's get _____ of here.
11. I just have to get _____ the first five minutes of my speech, and then I'll be fine.
12. The driver's door opened and the elderly woman got _____.
13. Once he had got _____ the shock of seeing me again, we had a good time.
14. The exam was difficult. Not all candidates got _____.
15. The wedding's all arranged. There's no getting _____ it.
16. It's not a very big car. Do you think all five of us will get _____?
17. It is important that we get this message _____ to voters.
18. I always find it hard to get _____ revising.
19. We get _____ to Heathrow at ten o'clock.
20. It's quite easy to get _____ London.
21. I'm afraid I don't know what you are getting _____.
22. We've got a lot of work to get _____.
23. I don't really want this information to get _____.
24. Get _____ a number 73 bus at the corner. That will take you to High Street
25. We have to get _____ early in the morning before the traffic gets heavy.

E. REVISION

VOCABULARY

1. Choose the word that best completes each sentence.

1. The problems with the selling the house made her _____ about financial matters.
A. frail B. wary C. odd D. sophisticated
2. Our attempts at dancing were _____ - we all kept tripping over each other.
A. hilarious B. sober C. gloomy D. secure
3. She _____ her coat and ran for the bus.

- A. fled B. pivoted C. panned D. grabbed
4. He _____ the food greedily.
- A. clutched B. devoured C. eluded D. condescended
5. He made it _____ that we should leave.
- A. irregular B. solemn C. plain D. reasonable
6. Many people become mentally _____.
- A. comprehensible B. desperate C. merry D. frail
7. "How much are the tickets for Amsterdam?" I _____.
- A. inquired B. consumed C. resigned D. quit
8. She was held in high _____ by all who knew her.
- A. garment B. esteem C. token D. confusion
9. Medical techniques are becoming more _____ all the time.
- A. sophisticated B. associated C. correlated D. disoriented
10. You're trying to _____ me, and it won't work.
- A. moisten B. wipe C. gobble D. flatter
11. _____ users of the library may not realize that they now need a computerized ticket.
- A. intelligent B. amusing C. casual D. composed
12. The intensity of the sound _____ gradually.
- A. abandoned B. ceased C. embarrassed D. diminished
13. Success has _____ him so far.
- A. retired B. eluded C. condescended D. wiped
14. I felt _____ about how dirty my house was.
- A. elaborated B. composed C. embarrassed D. devoured
15. Let's leave the pots and pans to _____ overnight, and wash them in the morning.
- A. grab B. soak C. quit D. elude
16. His _____ to negotiate a ceasefire.
- A. mission B. purpose C. target D. subjective
17. Perhaps you father would _____ to help with the washing-up.

- A. condescend B. elude C. diminish D. smother
18. We need a more _____ assessment of chances of ending this war.
- A. hilarious B. visible C. sober D. obvious
19. There is still _____ over who is responsible for the accident.
- A. appreciation B. confusion C. affection D. desperation
20. Monks wear a special _____, called a habit.
- A. garment B. esteem C. token D. brim

2. Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

plain	score	devour	inquire
grabbed	eluded	frail	diminishing
secure	expenses	expenses	casual
confusion	sophisticated	wary	decline

- There is still a lot of _____ about how much fat it is safe to eat in your diet.
- The country is _____ political influence in the West.
- She had become _____ of relationships as a result of her childhood experiences.
- He _____ capture for weeks by hiding underground.
- He just _____ the bag from my hand and ran off.
- She wanted something more than a _____ relationship.
- She _____ 98% in the French test. .
- He felt slightly _____ at being the centre of attention.
- The document is written in _____ English, not in legal jargon.
- Operations of this type involve the use of highly _____ equipment.
- When he was a child he _____ detective fiction.
- His _____ arms could barely hold a plate.
- The 1980s saw a slow _____ in manufacturing industries.
- It's best to _____ about duty-free goods when you get to the airport.
- He believed in putting his money into conservative but _____ investments.
- He borrowed £150,000 and used the money for legal _____.

3. Write the word closest in meaning to the following groups of words.

- | | | | | |
|---------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1. inquire | A. query | B. answer | C. think | D. reply |
| 2. plain | A. frail | B. apparent | C. composed | D. vulnerable |
| 3. confusion | A. affection | B. evidence | C. decline | D. clutter |
| 4. elude | A. seize | B. ditch | C. associate | D. swallow |
| 5. sober | A. reasonable | B. frivolous | C. visible | D. immoderate |
| 6. wary | A. foolhardy | B. careless | C. cautious | D. ambitious |
| 7. casual | A. irregular | B. deliberate | C. calculated | D. natural |
| 8. hilarious | A. uncertain | B. evident | C. jolly | D. considerate |
| 9. pivot | A. penetrate | B. rotate | C. absorb | D. denounce |
| 10. devour | A. immerse | B. gasp | C. combine | D. gobble |

4. Write the word the most opposite to the following groups of words.

- | | | | | |
|-------------------|--------------|----------------|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. inquire | A. examine | B. investigate | C. answer | D. interrogate |
| 2. soak | A. drench | B. dry | C. ditch | D. consume |
| 3. pan | A. praise | B. blame | C. query | D. abandon |
| 4. grab | A. clutch | B. disengage | C. take | D. put |
| 5. sober | A. serene | B. tranquil | C. frivolous | D. cool |
| 6. wary | A. alert | B. careless | C. apprehensive | D. careful |
| 7. casual | A. odd | B. routine | C. negligent | D. indifferent |
| 8. esteem | A. commotion | B. reverence | C. evidence | D. disrespect |
| 9. elude | A. grasp | B. escape | C. resign | D. evade |
| 10. frail | A. mural | B. fragile | C. obvious | D. strong |

PHRASAL VERBS

5. Complete the sentences with the appropriate phrasal verbs.

1. Can you _____ the cooking while I walk the dog?
2. She doesn't _____ easily.
3. She _____ a group for single parents and their children.

4. I thought you'd never _____ .
5. They often talked about _____ their own business.
6. Stop _____ and go and tidy your room.
7. The army is _____ the enemy troops.
8. The messenger will _____ your reply in the morning.
9. We ran flat out for about half a mile before we could _____ them _____.
10. I don't think I can _____ this meeting any more.
11. How did things _____ in the end?
12. My face _____ when I eat a lot of chocolates.

IDIOMS

6. Complete the sentences with the appropriate idioms.

1. Try to _____ of every opportunity that comes your way.
2. We just couldn't _____ each other from the first time we met.
3. I have not _____ where to go.
4. Jane is trying to promote a compromise because she _____.
5. It's a beautiful day. Let's _____ it.
6. He only came to class _____.
7. The Democratic candidate is rapidly _____ in many states.
8. Don't _____ the steering wheel!
9. _____ this book is easier; it is much shorter.
10. Dan is a good student and a good athlete; we expect him to _____.
11. The plane climbed above the clouds and was flying _____.
12. My aunt is going to _____ to Florida only if I take her with me.

II GRAMMAR FOCUS

1. Write the negative prefixes and *in-*, *im-*, *un-*, *dis-*, *ir-*

_____ kind _____ important _____ easy _____ responsible

_____clear _____secure _____pleasant _____approving
_____patient _____graceful _____satisfactory _____favorable

2. Complete the sentences with the words from Exercise 1.

1. You're being very _____ to your sister.
2. His business methods have attracted plenty of _____ comment.
3. The terms of the contract are very _____.
4. They watched in _____ silence.
5. The report makes _____ comparisons with the system used in France.
6. "Come on!" said Maggie, becoming _____.
7. Their performance was _____ in a number of areas.
8. Their behavior was absolutely _____.
9. Employees' opinions were often treated as _____.
10. I had an _____ feeling that someone was following me.
11. Many of them work in low-paid, _____ jobs.
12. When it comes to money, Dan is completely _____.

3. Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions.

1. _____ the way home we saw a terrible car accident.
2. I had to park _____ the far corner of the parking lot.
3. She's madly _____ love with a guy she met in Spain.
4. The exams are _____ six weeks.
5. There is a line of trees _____ the river bank.
6. The woman at the desk greeted him _____ a low voice.
8. Two _____ three people think that the President should resign.
9. Details of the meeting had been circulated well _____ advance.
10. We had a fantastic view _____ the mountains from our room.

4. Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions.

1. We're so proud _____ her for telling the truth.
2. They fought _____ control of the islands.
3. The airport was full of relatives, waiting _____ the news of the missing plane.
4. His social problems were associated _____ heavy drinking.
5. Daniel looked _____ his watch.
6. What's happened _____ your coat? It's all ripped.
7. We are very pleased to have been presented _____ this prestigious award.
8. Do you like listening _____ music?
9. I vote _____ eating before we watch the video.
10. I apologize _____ taking so long to reply.

5. Complete the sentences with infinitive and gerunds.

1. We are old enough _____ (vote).
2. I would like _____ (learn) a foreign language.
3. I quit _____ (smoke) three years ago.
4. She's too shy _____ (talk) to the manager.
5. We've got enough money _____ (go) on holiday this year.
6. I'm sorry, I forgot _____ (call) you.
7. I'll never forget _____ (win) my first gold medal.
8. He left without _____ (say) good bye.
9. I regret _____ (inform) you that you have failed the exam.
10. They often go _____ (climb) at the weekends.
11. It's no use _____ (wait) for a bus. It won't come.
12. This apartment needs _____ (decorate).
13. I regret _____ (make) this mistake.
14. He tried _____ (win) the race.
15. Stacey spends all her free time _____ (paint).
16. He didn't feel like _____ (go) to work.

17. I don't mind _____ (drive) if you're tired.

18. I like him because he makes me _____ (laugh).

6. Complete the sentences using the correct form of *say* or *tell*.

1. "They looked exactly the same", she _____.
2. I can't _____ the difference between them.
3. She _____ some unpleasant things.
4. She is good at _____ people's fortune.
5. Don't _____ this secret, it's important for me!
6. She left without _____ goodbye.
7. I couldn't think of anything to _____.
8. To _____ you the truth, it makes me really angry!
9. She _____ that they're going to have a big wedding with lots of guests.
10. I don't think she would _____ a lie.
11. He looked as if he was going to _____ something.
12. Well, that's exactly what Claire _____ me.
13. _____ me his name!
14. Promise, you don't _____ a word about the accident to John.
15. I promised to _____ nothing about it to anyone.

7. Rewrite the sentences using the verbs in the box.

refuse	remind	wonder	encourage
threaten	explain	admit	forbid
complain	promise	deny	insist on

1. "I'll give you the money back tomorrow,"

2. "If you don't give us the money we'll reveal your secret,"

3. "Don't forget you have a doctor's appointment at 11 a.m.,"

4. "He's always moaning about everything,"

5. "It was John who wrote that graffiti,"

6. "I won't answer the question."

7. "What shall I do if the car won't start?"

8. "You mustn't talk during the test"

9. "Yes, I'm the thief"

10. "You must let me help you"

11. "Go on, buy yourself a new car"

12. "I did not lose the tickets"

8. Rewrite the sentences in Reported speech using the verbs order, command, tell, instruct.

1. "Turn around slowly!"

2. "Be quiet, children"

3. "Stop talking at once!"

4. "Don't be late, Tim."

5. "Hurry up, guys!"

6. "Passengers must cross the line by the footbridge."

7. "You are to report for duty immediately."
8. "Drop your weapons!"
9. "Sit down, Mary."
10. "Don't shoot, men!"
11. "Get out of the house"
12. "Put the shopping in the kitchen."
13. "Leave your keys at the desk, please!"
14. "Come back to see me again next week."
15. "Finish the job tonight."

9. Rewrite the sentences in Reported speech using the verbs *ask*.

1. "Could you please show me the way"
2. "Would you pass me a cigarette?"
3. "Will you open the window"
4. "Can you show me the way to the railway station?"
5. "Would you mind turning on the radio?"
6. "I wonder if you could help me with this task,"

10. Rewrite the following commands and requests in Reported speech.

1. "Please, don't shout,"
2. "Could you check the bill for me, please?"
3. "Would you talk more quietly?"
4. "Eat your dinner, boys,"
5. "Don't go near the sea, children,"
6. "Would you check the oil for me?"
7. "Stay there!"
8. "I wonder if you could help me with the menu, it's in French,"
9. "Keep your dog on leads in this area!"
10. "Could you possibly lend me 500\$?"

11. Underline the correct linking word / phrase.

1. Jane works very hard, *whereas / unlike* Kate is lazy.
2. The lamp was round – *like / likewise* a ball.
3. The food was excellent, *similarly / likewise* the wine.
4. Men must wear suits; *similarly / like*, women must wear a skirt or dress and not pants.
5. High inflation usually leads to high interest rates. *Similarly / Likewise*, interest rates decline when inflation is low.
6. I'm going to bed and you would be well advised to do *like / likewise*.
7. You two are behaving *like / likewise* children.
8. She was very well behaved, *whereas / unlike* most of the other children.
9. Doctors' salaries have risen substantially *whereas / unlike* nurses' pay has actually fallen.
10. *Whereas / Unlike* most commercials, this one is educational.
11. The stock lost 60 cents a share, *in contrast to / in contrast* last year, when it gained 21 cents.
12. The Marines also experimented with fast-attack vehicles, *similarly / similar to* dune buggies.

12. Rewrite the sentences using the word(s) in brackets.

1. The source of information is irrelevant. The information need not be confidential.
(Moreover / Although)

_____.
2. The cost of food and clothing has come down in recent years. Fuel prices have fallen quite considerably. (Similarly / Consequently)

_____.
3. He eats meat. She's a vegetarian. (whereas / likewise)

_____.
4. There was silence for a minute. He replied. (As a result / Then)

5. Time passed and there was still no news. We got more worried. (As / While)

6. Most people in the office come to work by car. I don't come to work by car.(Unlike / Like)

7. He jumped up. The phone rang. (until / when)

8. The plural of “shelf” is “shelves”. The plural of “wolf” is “wolves”. Similarly/ In contrast)

9. The bridge was unsafe. It was closed and repaired. (because / so)

10. At school, jeans are not allowed. Also long and untidy hair is not allowed.
(likewise / in contrast to)

11. All the others interested in the idea. I wasn't very interested in the idea. (Also/ Unlike)

12. The new cars have more efficient engines. They consume less gas. (Moreover/As a result)

13. The Order Law effectively banned strike action. The independent Unions continued
to call for strikes. (Beside this / Despite this)

14. We were walking home. We saw an accident. (Then / While)

15. He called me. He heard the news. (as well as / as soon as)

III AFTER READING THOUGHTS

A. UNDERSTANDING THE STORY

Part 1

1. Was Christian good at playing football?
2. What was other people's attitude to Christian?
3. When did Christian and Louise marry?
4. What did Louise's father do? When and how did he die?
5. What did Christian find out after Louise's father died?
6. How did Christian feel after he quit playing football?

Part 2

1. What did Louise do for a living?
2. What position was Louise promoted to?
3. What jobs did Christian try after he quit football?
4. What kind of people came to their house?
5. What did they talk about?
6. What was the last job Christian was offered?
7. What did Louise say when Christian told her about the job?

B. READING BETWEEN THE LINES

1. Why did Louise want to show she was Christian's Darling girl?
2. What was Christian like?
3. Was Christian successful in the jobs he did?
4. Do you think Christian was satisfied with his life?
5. Why did Christian hate being called "Baby"?
6. What was Louise like?
7. Do you think Christian and Louise had the same interests in art, literature?
8. How did Louise feel about Christian's failure to get on in life?

9. What did Christian consider to be the high point, “the eighty-yard run” in life?

10. What is the meaning of the title as it relates to the plot of the story?

C. ANALYZING THE STORY

1. Make a chart and list each character’s (Christian and Louise) qualities/habits. Then compare them, using linking words (compared with, as well as..., in contrast to..., similar to..., while, likewise, although, also, both and, but, whereas).

Character	Qualities	Behavior / Event
Louise	sociable	enjoyed being in the public eye, went out a great deal, ...
	versatile	was interested in art galleries, was ready to run family business...
	romantic	
		she bought him crazy presents
Christian		Enjoyed staying at home,
	lazy	

2. Think of some examples of cause-and effect relationship in the story. Then complete the following chart.

CAUSE	EFFECT
1.	1. Christian started drinking.
2.	2.
3. Louise married Christian.	3.
4.	4.
5.	5.

D. SHARING IDEAS

1. Discuss the relations between Christian and Louise. Did their relations change? Why?
2. There is a saying “Love doesn’t mean looking at each other, love means following the same direction”. How does it apply to the story you have read?
3. Give the examples from the story which show that these two people could not make each other happy?
4. Continue the statement: “To save their marriage, Christian and Louise should...”

E. WRITING

1. Compare and contrast Christian and Louise. In what way are they alike? How are they different?
2. Contrast Christian and Louise in their attitude towards life.

UNIT II

The Lottery

by Shirley Jackson

PART 1

The morning of June 27th was clear and sunny, with the fresh warmth of a full-summer day; the flowers were blossoming profusely and the grass was richly green. The people of the village began to gather in the square, between the post office and the bank, around ten o'clock; in some towns there were so many people that the lottery took two days and had to be started on June 26th, but in this village, where there were only about three hundred people, the whole lottery took less than two hours, so it could begin at ten o'clock in the morning and still be through in time to allow the villagers to get home for noon dinner.

The children assembled first, of course. School was recently over for the summer, and the feeling of liberty sat uneasily on most of them; they tended to gather together quietly for a while before they broke into boisterous play, and their talk was still of the classroom and the teacher, of books and reprimands. Bobby Martin had already stuffed his pockets full of stones, and the other boys soon followed his example, selecting the smoothest and roundest stones; Bobby and Harry Jones and Dickie Delacroix — the villagers pronounced this name "Dellacroy" — eventually made a great pile of stones in one corner of the square and guarded it against the raids of the other boys. The girls stood aside, talking among themselves, looking over their shoulders at the boys, and the very small children rolled in the dust or clung to the hands of their older brothers or sisters. Soon the men began to gather, surveying their own children, speaking of planting and rain, tractors and taxes. They stood together, away from the pile of stones in the corner, and their jokes were quiet and they smiled rather than laughed. The women, wearing faded house dresses and sweaters, came shortly after their men folk. They greeted one another and exchanged bits of gossip as they went to join their husbands. Soon

the women, standing by their husbands, began to call to their children, and the children came reluctantly, having to be called four or five times. Bobby Martin ducked under his mother's grasping hand and ran, laughing, back to the pile of stones. His father spoke up sharply, and Bobby came quickly and took his place between his father and his oldest brother.

The lottery was conducted – as were the square dances, the teenage club, the Halloween program – by Mr. Summers, who had time and energy to devote to civic activities. He was a round-faced, jovial man and he ran the coal business, and people were sorry for him, because he had no children and his wife was a scold. When he arrived in the square, carrying the black wooden box, there was a murmur of conversation among the villagers and he waved and called, "Little late today, folks." The postmaster, Mr. Graves, followed him, carrying a three-legged stool, and the stool was put in the center of the square and Mr. Summers set the black box down on it. The villagers kept their distance, leaving a space between themselves and the stool, and when Mr. Summers said, "Some of you fellows want to give me a hand?" there was a hesitation before two men, Mr. Martin and his oldest son, Baxter, came forward to hold the box steady on the stool while Mr. Summers stirred up the papers inside it.

The original paraphernalia for the lottery had been lost long ago, and the black box now resting on the stool had been put into use even before Old Man Warner, the oldest man in town was born. Mr. Summers spoke frequently to the villagers about making a new box, but no one liked to upset even as much tradition as was represented by the black box. There was a story that the present box had been made with some pieces of the box that had preceded it, the one that had been constructed when the first people settled down to make a village here. Every year, after the lottery, Mr. Summers began talking again about a new box, but every year the subject was allowed to fade off without anything's being done. The black box grew shabbier each year; by now it was no longer completely black but splintered badly along one side to show the original wood color, and in some places faded or stained.

Mr. Martin and his oldest son, Baxter, held the black box securely on the stool until Mr. Summers had stirred the papers thoroughly with his hand. Because so much of the ritual had been forgotten or discarded, Mr. Summers had been successful in having slips of paper substituted for the chips of wood that had been used for generations. Chips of wood, Mr. Summers had argued, had been all very well when the village was tiny, but now that the population was more than three hundred and likely to keep on growing, it was necessary to use something that would fit more easily into the black box. The night before the lottery, Mr. Summers and Mr. Graves made up the slips of paper and put them in the box, and it was then taken to the safe of Mr. Summer's coal company and locked up until Mr. Summers was ready to take it to the square next morning. The rest of the year, the box was put away, sometimes one place, sometimes – another; it had spent one year in Mr. Graves barn and another year underfoot in the post office, and sometimes it was set on a shelf in the Martin grocery and left there.

There was a great deal of hissing to be done before Mr. Summers declared the lottery open. There were lists to make up – heads of families, heads of households in each family, members of each household in each family. There was the proper swearing of Mr. Summers by the postmaster, as the official of the lottery; at one time, some people remembered, there had been a recital of some sort, performed by the official of the lottery, a perfunctory, tuneless chant that had been rattled off duly each year; some people believed that the official of the lottery used to stand just so when he said or sang it, others believed that he was supposed to walk among the people, but years and years ago this part of the ritual had been allowed to lapse. There had been, also, a ritual salute, which the official of the lottery had had to use in addressing each person who came up to draw from the box, but this also had changed with time, until now it was felt necessary only for the official to speak to each person approaching. Mr. Summers was very good at all this; in his clean white shirt and blue jeans, with one hand resting carelessly on the black box, he seemed very proper and important as he talked interminably to Mr. Graves and the Martins.

Just as Mr. Summers finally left off talking and turned to the assembled villagers, Mrs. Hutchinson came hurriedly along the path to the square, her sweater thrown over her shoulders, and slid into place in the back of the crowd. "Clean forgot what day it was," she said to Mrs. Delacroix, who stood next to her, and they both laughed softly. "Thought my old man was out back stacking wood," Mrs. Hutchinson went on, "and then I looked out the window and the kids were gone, and then I remembered it was the twenty-seventh and came a running." She dried her hands on her apron, and Mrs. Delacroix said, "You're in time, though. They're still talking away up there."

Mrs. Hutchinson craned her neck to see through the crowd and found her husband and children standing near the front. She tapped Mrs. Delacroix on the arm as a farewell and began to make her way through the crowd. The people separated good-humoredly to let her through; two or three people said, in voices just loud enough to be heard across the crowd, "Here comes your Missus, Hutchinson," and "Rill, she made it after all." Mrs. Hutchinson reached her husband, and Mr. Summers, who had been waiting, said cheerfully, "Thought we were going to have to get on without you, Tessie." Mrs. Hutchinson said, grinning, "Wouldn't have me leave my dishes in the sink, now would you, Joe?", and soft laughter ran through the crowd as the people stirred back into position after Mrs. Hutchison's arrival.

PART 2

"Well, now," Mr. Summers said soberly, "guess we better get started, get this over with, so we can go back to work. Anybody ain't here?" "Dunbar," several people said. "Dunbar, Dunbar."

Mr. Summers consulted his list. "Clyde Dunbar," he said. "That's right. He's broke his leg, hasn't he? Who's drawing for him?"

"Me, I guess," a woman said, and Mr. Summers turned to look at her. "Wife draws for her husband," Mr. Summers said. "Don't you have a grown boy to do it for you, Janey?" Although Mr. Summers and everyone else in the village knew the answer perfectly

well, it was the business of the official of the lottery to ask such questions formally. Mr. Summers waited with an expression of polite interest while Mrs. Dunbar answered.

"Horace's not but sixteen yet," Mrs. Dunbar said regretfully. "Guess I gotta fill in for the old man this year."

"Right," Mr. Summers said. He made a note on the list he was holding. Then he asked, "Watson boy drawing this year?"

A tall boy in the crowd raised his hand. "Here," he said. "I'm drawing for my mother and me." He blinked his eyes nervously and ducked his head as several voices in the crowd said things like "Good fellow, Jack," and "Glad to see your mother's got a man to do it."

"Well," Mr. Summers said, "guess that's everyone. Old Man Warner make it?"

"Here," a voice said and Mr. Summers nodded.

A sudden hush fell on the crowd as Mr. Summers cleared his throat and looked at the list. "All ready?" he called. "Now, I'll read the names – heads or families first – and the men come up and take a paper out of the box. Keep the paper folded in your hand without looking at it until everyone has had a turn. Everything clear?"

The people had done it so many times, that they only half listened to the directions; most of them were quiet, wetting their lips, not looking around. Then Mr. Summers raised one hand high and said, "Adams." A man disengaged himself from the crowd and came forward. "Hi, Steve," Mr. Summers said, and Mr. Adams said, "Hi, Joe." They grinned at one another humorlessly and nervously. Then Mr. Adams reached into the black box and took out a folded paper. He held it firmly by one corner as he turned and went hastily back to his place in the crowd, where he stood a little apart from his family, not looking down at his hand.

"Allen," Mr. Summers said. "Anderson . . . Bentham."

"Seems like there's no time at all between lotteries any more," Mrs. Delacroix said to Mrs. Graves in the back row. "Seems like we got through with the last one only last week."

"Time sure goes fast," Mrs. Graves said.

"Clark . . . Delacroix." "There goes my old man," Mrs. Delacroix said. She held her breath while her husband went forward. "Dunbar," Mr. Summers said, and Mrs. Dunbar went steadily to the box while one of the women said, "Go on, Janey," and another said, "There she goes." "We're next," Mrs. Graves said. She watched while Mr. Graves came around from the side of the box, greeted Mr. Summers gravely, and selected a slip of paper from the box. By now, all through the crowd there were men holding the small folded papers in their large hands, turning them over and over nervously. Mrs. Dunbar and her two sons stood together, Mrs. Dunbar holding the slip of paper.

"Harburt. . . Hutchinson."

"Get up there, Bill," Mrs. Hutchinson said, and the people near her laughed.

"Jones."

"They do say," Mr. Adams said to Old Man Warner, who stood next to him, "that over in the north village they're talking of giving up the lottery." Old Man Warner snorted. "Pack of crazy fools," he said. "Listening to the young folks, nothing's good enough for them. Next thing you know, they'll be wanting to go back to living in caves, nobody work any more, live that way for a while. Used to be a saying about 'Lottery in June, corn be heavy soon.' First thing you know, we'd all be eating stewed chickweed and acorns. There's always been a lottery," he added petulantly. "Bad enough to see young Joe Summers up there joking with everybody."

"Some places have already quit lotteries," Mrs. Adams said.

"Nothing but trouble in that," Old Man Warner said stoutly. "Pack of young fools."

"Martin." And Bobby Martin watched his father go forward. "Overdyke... Percy."

"I wish they'd hurry," Mrs. Dunbar said to her older son. "I wish they'd hurry."

"They're almost through," her son said.

"You get ready to run tell Dad," Mrs. Dunbar said.

Mr. Summers called his own name and then stepped forward precisely and selected a slip from the box. Then he called, "Warner." – "Seventy-seventh year I been in the lottery," Old Man Warner said as he went through the crowd. "Seventy-seventh time."

“Watson.” The tall boy came awkwardly through the crowd. Someone said, “Don’t be nervous, Jack”, and Mr. Summers said, “Take your time, son.”

After that, there was a long pause, a breathless pause, until Mr. Summers, holding his slip of paper in the air, said, “All right, fellows.” For a minute, no one moved, and then all the slips of paper were opened. Suddenly, all women began to speak at once, saying, “Who is it?” “Who’s got it?” “Is it the Dunbars?” “Is it the Watsons?” Then the voices began to say, “It’s Hutchinson. It’s Bill.” “Bill Hutchinson’s got it.”

“Go tell your father,” Mrs. Dunbar said to her older son.

People began to look around to see the Hutchinsons. Bill Hutchinson was standing quiet, staring down at the paper in his hand. Suddenly, Tessie Hutchinson shouted to Mr. Summers, “You didn’t give him time enough to take any paper he wanted. I saw you. It wasn’t fair!”

“Be a good sport, Tessie,” Mrs. Delacroix called, and Mrs. Graves said, “All of us took the same chance.”

“Shut up, Tessie,” Bill Hutchinson said.

“Well, everyone,” Mr. Summers said, “that was done pretty fast, and now we’ve got to be hurrying a little more to get done in time.” He consulted his next list. “Bill,” he said, “you draw for the Hutchinson family. You got any other households in the Hutchinsons?”

“There’s Don and Eva,” Mrs. Hutchinson yelled. “Make them take their chance!”

“Daughters draw with their husbands’ families, Tessie,” Mr. Summers said gently. “You know that as well as anyone else.”

“It wasn’t fair,” Tessie said.

“I guess not, Joe,” Bill Hutchinson said regretfully. “My daughter draws with her husband’s family, that’s only fair. And I’ve got no other family except the kids.”

“Then, as far as drawing for families is concerned, it’s you,” Mr. Summers said in explanation, “and as far as drawing for households is concerned, that’s you, too. Right?”

“Right,” Bill Hutchinson said.

“How many kids, Bill?” Mr. Summers asked formally.

"Three," Bill Hutchinson said. "There's Bill, Jr., and Nancy, and little Dave. And Tessie and me."

"All right, then," Mr. Summers said. "Harry, you got their tickets back?"

Mr. Graves nodded and held up the slips of paper. "Put them in the box, then," Mr. Summers directed. "Take Bill's and put it in."

"I think we ought to start over," Mrs. Hutchinson said, as quietly as she could. "I tell you it wasn't fair. You didn't give him time enough to choose. Everybody saw that."

Mr. Graves had selected the five slips and put them in the box, and he dropped all the papers but those onto the ground, where the breeze caught them and lifted them off.

"Listen, everybody," Mrs. Hutchinson was saying to the people around her. "Ready, Bill?" Mr. Summers said, "Take the slips and keep them folded until each person has taken one. Harry, you help little Dave." Mr. Graves took the hand of the little boy, who came willingly with him up to the box. "Take a paper out of the box, Davy," Mr. Summers said. Davy put his hand into the box and laughed. "Take just one paper," Mr. Summers said. "Harry, you hold it for him." Mr. Graves took the child's hand and removed the folded paper from the tight fist and held it while Dave stood next to him and looked up at him wonderingly.

"Nancy next," Mr. Summers said. Nancy was twelve, and her school friends breathed heavily as she went forward, switching her skirt, and took a slip daintily from the box. "Bill, Jr.," Mr. Summers said, and Billy, his face red and his feet overlarge, nearly knocked the box over as he got a paper out. "Tessie," Mr. Summers said. She hesitated for a minute, looking around defiantly, and then set her lips and went up to the box. She snatched a paper out and held it behind her.

"Bill," Mr. Summers said, and Bill Hutchinson reached into the box and felt around, bringing his hand out at last with the slip of paper in it.

The crowd was quiet. A girl whispered, "I hope it's not Nancy," and the sound of the whisper reached the edges of the crowd.

"It's not the way it used to be," Old Man Warner said clearly. "People ain't the way they used to be."

"All right," Mr. Summers said. "Open the papers. Harry, you open little Dave's."

Mr. Graves opened the slip of paper and there was a general sigh through the crowd as he held it up and everyone could see that it was blank. Nancy and Bill, Jr., opened theirs at the same time, and both beamed and laughed, turning around to the crowd and holding their slips of paper above their heads.

"Tessie," Mr. Summers said. There was a pause, and then Mr. Summers looked at Bill Hutchinson, and Bill unfolded his paper and showed it. It was blank.

"It's Tessie," Mr. Summers said, and his voice was hushed. "Show us her paper, Bill."

Bill Hutchinson went over to his wife and forced the slip of paper out of her hand. It had a black spot on it, the black spot Mr. Summers had made the night before with the heavy pencil in the coal-company office. Bill Hutchinson held it up, and there was a stir in the crowd.

"All right, folks," Mr. Summers said, "let's finish quickly."

Although the villagers had forgotten the ritual and lost the original black box, they still remembered to use stones. The pile of stones the boys had made earlier was ready; there were stones on the ground with the blowing scraps of paper that had come out of the box. Mrs. Delacroix selected a stone so large she had to pick it up with both hands and turned to Mrs. Dunbar. "Come on," she said. "Hurry up."

Mrs. Dunbar had small stones in both hands, and she said, gasping for breath, "I can't run at all. You'll have to go ahead and I'll catch up with you."

The children had stones already, and someone gave little Davy Hutchinson a few pebbles.

Tessie Hutchinson was in the center of a cleared space by now, and she held her hands out desperately as the villagers moved in on her. "It isn't fair," she said. A stone hit her on the side of the head.

Old Man Warner was saying, "Come on, come on, everyone." Steve Adams was in the front of the crowd of villagers, with Mrs. Graves beside him.

"It isn't fair, it isn't right," Mrs. Hutchinson screamed, and then they were upon her.

I. LANGUAGE FOCUS

A. VOCABULARY

Part 1

1. profuse – existing or being produced in large amounts

The flowers are profuse in spring.

profusely – many times, or in large numbers or amounts

Keiko thanked them profusely.

2. assemble – to bring a group of things / people together for a particular purpose

How long would it take to assemble a team for a project like this?

3. tend to do smth – to be likely to do a particular thing

He tends to exaggerate.

4. boisterous – noisy and full of life and energy

The children and the dogs raced out of the house to give me a boisterous welcome.

5. reprimand – to tell smb officially / in a serious way that they have done smth wrong

Several managers were reprimanded for their treatment of women.

6. stuff – to push things into a small space or container quickly

He stuffed some clothes into a bag and left.

7. pile – a number of things put on top of each other

She sorted her clothes into tidy piles.

8. survey – to look at or examine smth

She opened her eyes and surveyed her surroundings.

He surveyed himself in the mirror before going out.

to ask a large number of people questions to find out their opinions

We surveyed 500 smokers and found that over three quarters would like to give up.

9. fade – to become gradually less clear or noticeable until it finally disappears

Marie's smile slowly faded.

He was wearing faded blue jeans.

10. men folk – the men in a family or community

Next Monday the village will be sending its menfolk off to war.

11. gossip – conversation about other people, especially their private lives

Tell me all the latest gossip!

The gossip was that he had lost a fortune on the stock exchange.

12. duck – to lower your head or body quickly to move under smth

Young children can just duck under the gate and avoid paying.

13. grasp – to take and hold smth or smb very tightly

She grasped his hand and pulled him towards her.

14. conduct – to do smth in an organized way

The agreement doesn't allow you to conduct business from your home.

15. civic – relating to a town or city

Civic leaders cannot agree on what is best for the city.

relating to the people who live in a town or city

It is your civic duty to vote in the local elections.

16. murmur – a soft low sound made by people speaking quietly or a long way away

When she woke up she heard the murmur of voices in the other room.

a complaint, but not a strong or official complaint

There have been murmurs of discontent over the new rules.

17. follow – to go, walk, drive, etc. behind or after someone else

The patrol car followed the BMW for a few miles and then lost it.

to do smth. in the way that smb. has told or advised you to do it

He followed the doctor's advice and had no further trouble.

Follow the instructions very carefully when filling in the form.

18. paraphernalia – a lot of small things belonging to smb or needed for a particular activity

Skiing paraphernalia is stored in the garage.

Their home was decorated with Elvis Presley paraphernalia.

19. upset – to change a plan or situation in a way that causes problems

The ecological balance of the area has been upset.

20. represent – to be a sign or mark that means smth or to be a symbol of smth

Brown areas represent deserts on the map.

He hated the school and everything it represented.

21. precede – to happen or exist before something or someone

Lunch will be preceded by a short speech from the chairman.

22. shabby – older and in worse condition

The outside of the house was beginning to look shabby.

She wore shabby old jeans and a T-shirt.

23. splinter – to break into thin sharp pieces

The old board splintered the moment I stepped on it.

24. discard – to get rid of smth that you no longer want or need

The gang discarded their weapons after the attack.

25. slip of paper – a small piece of paper

I wrote it down on a slip of paper.

26. chip – a small piece of wood, stone etc. that has broken off smth

Chips of wood can be used around plants to control weeds.

27. fit (in / into) – to have enough space for smth to go there

I don't think we'll be able to fit any more people into the car.

28. underfoot – under your feet in the place where you are walking

Don't wear those sandals if it's wet underfoot.

29. proper – right, suitable, good or socially or legally correct and acceptable

Everything was in its proper place.

The proper name for Matthew's condition is hyperkinetic syndrome.

I don't feel that it would be proper for me to give you that information.

30. recital – a performance of music or poetry; a long spoken description of smth

They both launched into a recital of their misfortunes.

31. perfunctory – done without much effort or interest

Officers made a perfunctory search of the room.

32. duly – in the proper or expected way or at the proper time

Here are your travel documents, all duly signed.

The Queen duly appeared on the balcony to wave to the crowds.

33. lapse – to gradually come to an end or to stop

The conversation lapsed.

34. interminably – continuing for a long time in a boring or annoying way

The meeting dragged on interminably.

35. stack – to make things into a neat pile

The assistants price the items and stack them on the shelves.

Boxes were stacked in the corner.

36. tap – to touch smb or smth gently, or make a soft knocking sound

Michael tapped his nose with his forefinger.

He turned as someone tapped him on the shoulder.

PRACTICE

1. Write the word closest in meaning to the following groups of words.

1. lively, noisy, excited, cheerful _____
2. criticize, scold, nitpick, pick on, pick up, reproach _____
3. check out, observe, inspect, scrutinize _____
4. right, suitable, correct, acceptable, decent, real _____
5. plentiful, abundant, excessive, bountiful _____
6. rumor, chat, tittle-tattle, hearsay, chatter _____
7. expire, stop, terminate, finish, decline, deteriorate _____
8. automatic, careless, negligent, sketchy _____
9. infinite, boring, boundless, constant, endless _____
10. come next, accompany, arise, result, proceed _____

2. Choose the word that best completes each sentence.

1. I never listen to office _____ .
A. gossip B. grin C. lapse D. duly
2. When are you going to settle down and get a (n) _____ job ?
A. interminable B. proper C. perfunctory D. profuse
3. They _____ the plan that Elizabeth had worked out.
A. lapsed B. gossiped C. profused D. followed
4. She was in a hurry and gave her mother a(n) _____ kiss on the cheek.
A. interminable B. profuse C. shabby D. perfunctory

5. I let the conversation _____ and Kelly finally spoke up.
 A. lapse B. survey C. gossip D. reprimand
6. It was a challenge, keeping ten _____ seven-year-olds amused.
 A. neat B. boisterous C. profuse D. duly
7. He was severely _____ for his unsuitable behavior.
 A. surveyed B. reprimanded C. recited D. lapsed
8. I phoned the Daily News with _____ apologies for the misunderstanding.
 A. interminable B. boisterous C. profuse D. desperately
9. The next morning we _____ the damage caused by the fire.
 A. profused B. faded C. tapped D. surveyed
10. That _____ journey made them feel exhausted.
 A. lapse B. enjoyable C. interminable D. profuse

3. Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

proper	surveying	perfunctory	profuse	follow
reprimanded	lapse	gossip	boisterous	interminable

1. I was _____ for having done everything wrong.
2. _____ bleeding can cause death.
3. Tom's already gone out to Rome and his wife and children will _____ shortly.
4. Since the speech had been boring, the applause was _____.
5. Noisy and cheerful, these _____ children arose much admiration.
6. Don't believe all the _____ you hear.
7. Crockett wishes he hadn't let his insurance policies _____ last year.
8. Try to eat _____ meals instead of unhealthy fast-food takeaways.
9. These _____ delays drive me up a wall.
10. He was sitting quietly and _____ the scene around him.

4. Choose the word closest in meaning to a boldfaced word.

- | | | | | |
|------------------------|---------------|--------------|---------------|--------------|
| 1. interminable | A. careless | B. boring | C. decent | D. lively |
| 2. survey | A. scold | B. proceed | C. chatter | D. inspect |
| 3. profuse | A. abundant | B. shabby | C. acceptable | D. negligent |
| 4. lapse | A. scrutinize | B. proceed | C. stop | D. reproach |
| 5. boisterous | A. sad | B. noisy | C. bountiful | D. suitable |
| 6. follow | A. decline | B. nitpick | C. accompany | D. precede |
| 7. proper | A. infinite | B. excessive | C. constant | D. right |
| 8. reprimand | A. scold | B. hearsay | C. examine | D. proceed |
| 9. gossip | A. rumor | B. right | C. murmur | D. grasp |
| 10. perfunctory | A. constant | B. correct | C. duly | D. careless |

Part 2

- 1. blink** – to open and close your eyes quickly

He blinked as he stepped out into the sunlight.

- 2. fold** – to bend a piece of paper, cloth etc by laying one part over another

Fold the paper along the dotted line.

Lewis folded the note and put it in his pocket.

- 3. disengage** – to separate smb or smth from the person or thing that holds them

She gently disengaged herself from her sleeping son.

We saw the booster rockets disengage and fall into the sea.

- 4. reach** (into) – to move your hand towards smth you are trying to touch or pick up

Travis reached into his pocket to get his car keys.

- 5. hastily** – done in a hurry because you do not have much time

She hastily changed the subject.

- 6. gravely** – very seriously, giving you a reason to feel worried

She is gravely ill.

He nodded gravely as I poured out my troubles.

- 7. snort** – to make a sudden noise through your nose, when angry, laughing, or disgusted

Michael snorted indignantly.

8. pack – a group of people , especially a group who you do not approve of

The hostages had to face a pack of reporters and photographers.

9. petulantly – behaving in an impatient and angry way for no reason at all, like a child

'I won't go!' he said petulantly.

10. stoutly – showing that you are very determined and brave

She stoutly denied the rumours.

11. precise(ly) – careful(ly) about how you behave, paying attention to small details

Mrs. Trickett was a precise, careful woman.

exactly, clearly

At the end of the war we were in precisely the same financial position as before.

used for showing that you completely agree with what smb says

You mean he took the money for himself? – Precisely.

12. yell – to shout loudly

He yelled at the other driver.

13. nod – move one's head up and down to show agreement or to greet smb

I asked him if he would help me and he nodded.

The president nodded to the crowd as he passed in the motorcade.

14. remove – to take something away from, out of, or off the place where it is

Remove the old wallpaper and fill any holes in the walls.

15. daintily – carefully, often in a way that suggests good manners

She blew her nose as daintily as possible.

16. defiant(ly) – refusing to obey a person or rule

He behaved defiantly because of the bad mood.

Defiant party members openly challenged the leadership.

17.snatch – to pull or take smth away quickly

Her brother snatched the letter and tore it open.

18. blank – empty, with nothing written on it

Sign your name in the blank space below.

Write on one side of the paper and leave the other side blank.

19. beam – to have a big happy smile on your face

She was positively beaming with pleasure.

The barman beamed a warm smile at her.

20. hush – used for telling smb to be quiet or to calm smb

Hush! You'll wake Mom!

She was gently hushing the baby.

21. force – to make smb or smth move into a different position, esp. using great strength

Firemen entering the building were forced back by flames.

She tried to keep the door shut but the man forced it open.

to make someone do something they do not want to do

I had to force myself to get up this morning.

Bad health forced him into taking early retirement.

22. spot – a small round area on a surface, that is a different color from the rest

Which has spots, the leopard or the tiger?

The male bird has a red spot on its beak.

23. stir – excitement, anger or shock that is felt by a number of people

Her resignation caused quite a stir.

24. scrap (of paper) – a small piece of paper, cloth etc

He wrote his address on a scrap of paper.

A rug was made out of old scraps of material.

25. pebble – a smooth, round stone that is found in or near water

What we loved most was throwing pebbles into the river.

PRACTICE

1. Write the word closest in meaning to the following groups of words.

1. take away, withdraw, eliminate, delete

2. separate, divide, disconnect, loosen

3. bare, clean, empty, unmarked, void

4. aggressive, disobedient, daring, rebellious

5. severe, serious, significant, worrying, vital

6. moody, complaining, irritable, peevish

7. bulldoze, coerce, compel, make, impose on

8. exact, accurate, definite, correct, unambiguous

9. fast, hurried, impulsive, hot-headed _____

10. grab away, clutch, grasp, grip _____

2. Choose the word that best completes each item.

1. Don't be too _____. This is an important decision.
A. precise B. hasty C. grave D. blank
2. These events could have _____ consequences for us all.
A. stout B. dainty C. hasty D. grave
3. Reference books may not be _____ from the library.
A. removed B. disengaged C. folded D.
4. When parking the car the gears should be _____.
A. snatched B. gasped C. disengaged D. forced
5. Demonstrators became increasingly _____ of police controls.
A. impulsive B. defiant C. petulant D. irritable
6. You're acting like a _____ four-year-old.
A. petty B. pebble C. precise D. petulant
7. Huong saw two youths _____ a woman's purse.
A. disengage B. hush C. snatch D. grin
8. He was disappointed to find out that the floppy disk was _____.
A. blank B. petulant C. precise D. blink
9. I gave them _____ instructions on how to get here.
A. grave B. precise C. bare D. stout
10. She could not stand him, but she _____ herself to speak to him.
A. beamed B. disengaged C. snorted D. forced

3. Complete each item with a word from the box.

petulant	remove	defiant	hasty	disengaged
snatched	blank	precise	grave	forced

1. She couldn't be very _____ about what her attacker was wearing.
2. Katherine angrily _____ her hand out of his grasp.
3. The bank robber _____ us to lie on the floor.
4. I would like you to _____ my name from your mailing list
5. John gently _____ himself from his sister's tearful embrace.
6. His ill health made him more _____ than ever. He was like a child.
7. Jim makes _____ decisions and then wonders why they are all wrong.
8. He never respected Eve. No wonder he was _____ to her that day.
9. Excuse me, it's urgent. This is a matter of _____ concern.
10. Will started writing from page 3, leaving the first two pages _____.

4. Choose the word closest in meaning to a boldfaced word.

- | | | | | |
|---------------------|----------------|--------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1. blank | A. empty | B. fast | C. correct | D. severe |
| 2. snatch | A. coerce | B. grasp | C. delete | D. blink |
| 3. petulant | A. ambiguous | B. impulsive | C. empty | D. peevish |
| 4. grave | A. complaining | B. accurate | C. daring | D. serious |
| 5. disengage | A. eliminate | B. compel | C. disconnect | D. clutch |
| 6. hasty | A. precise | B. moody | C. impulsive | D. daring |
| 7. remove | A. loosen | B. eliminate | C. bulldoze | D. grab |
| 8. force | A. compel | B. dare | C. withdraw | D. loosen |
| 9. defiant | A. vital | B. impulsive | C. definite | D. rebellious |
| 10. precise | A. frequent | B. exact | C. irritable | D. hurried |

B. PHRASAL VERBS

Part 1

1. **be through** (with smth) – to have finished doing smth

Newman's broken leg means he is through for the season.

Are you through with politics?

2. **break into** – to start doing smth, especially run, laughter, applause

The children saw the sea and broke into a run.

I almost expected him to break into song.

3. speak up – to say something, especially to express your opinion

Gentlemen, if there is anything you have to say, please, speak up.

4. stir (smth) up – to make small pieces of smth move around in the air or in water

The wind had stirred up a powdery red dust.

to deliberately try to cause arguments or bad feelings between people

Dave's just trying to stir things up because he's jealous.

5. settle down – to start living in one place, behaving in a responsible way

She had a number of part-time jobs before she eventually settled down.

6. keep on – to continue doing something, or to do something many times

You just have to keep on trying.

7. make up – to prepare or arrange smth by putting things together

I made up a batch of cookies for the church social.

The maid will make up your room.

8. put away – to put smth in the place where you keep it when you are not using it

He put the notebook away and stood up. You never put away your toys.

9. rattle off – to say smth aloud from memory without having to think too hard

She rattled off the names of everyone coming to the party.

10. leave off – stop doing smth

He left off playing the piano to answer the door.

11. slide into – to move something or somewhere quietly and smoothly

He slid the gun into his pocket.

12. get on – continue doing smth to make progress,

Be quiet and get on with your work!

How is George getting on at school?

PRACTICE

1. Match phrasal verbs with their definitions.

1. make up

a. make progress

- | | |
|----------------|-----------------------------------|
| 2. be through | b. start doing smth |
| 3. rattle off | c. finish |
| 4. settle down | d. continue |
| 5. speak up | e. start living in one place |
| 6. break into | f. put smth in its place |
| 7. keep on | g. arrange smth |
| 8. get on | h. provoke |
| 9. put away | i. say smth fast without thinking |
| 10. stir up | j. express opinion |

2. Replace the underlined words with suitable phrasal verbs.

1. He continued telling himself how short the distance was.
2. Put your toys where you usually keep them – our guests are coming soon.
3. We watched her puzzled face gently burst into a smile.
4. I don't know how we'll progress without Michael.
5. She can tell by heart the names of all the presidents of the US.
6. Who is that guy who is always making trouble?
7. Why don't you prepare a list of what we need from the store?
8. Have you finished using the computer?
9. Having a baby often helps people to become responsible
10. There was a brief silence, then Gerald said something.

3. Complete the sentences with the appropriate phrasal verbs.

1. _____ your toys, children, it's bed time.
2. John was always _____ trouble in class.
3. Can you _____ these papers into parcels of about twenty each?
4. He had learned everything and _____ his lesson without any difficulty.
5. He _____ after he married Vicki.
6. As soon as the policeman turned away, the men _____ a run.

7. It is better to remain silent and look like a fool than to _____ and remove all doubt.
8. She pretended not to hear, and _____ walking.
9. As soon as I _____ with the book, I'll return it.
10. How are you _____ with your essay?

Part 2

1. get smth over (with) – to do and finish smth difficult; succeed in smth.

I can't wait to get the interview over with.

2. fill in for smb – to do smb's job for a short time while they are not there

Beth, I need you to fill in for Tina while she's on vacation.

3. get through (with smth) – to finish doing smth

I want to get through this chapter before I go to bed.

4. go on – to continue doing smth. or being in a situation / continue talking

He went on working until he was 91.

to do smth. after you have finished doing something else

After dropping out of Harvard, he went on to become one of the richest men in the world.

Go on to question 5 when you're finished.

5. go ahead – to go somewhere before the other people in your group:

You go ahead and we'll catch you up later.

He stood back to let Sue go ahead of him.

used to give smb permission to do smth, or let them speak before you:

'Do you mind if I open the window?' 'No, go ahead.'

If you want to leave, go right ahead.

6. hold out smth. – to put forward, extend; offer

He held out his hand to help her to her feet.

The clerk held out a dress for Maria to try on.

7. move in on smb – to go towards a place or group of people, in order to attack them or take control of them

Police moved in on the demonstrators in the square.

Investors moved in on a group of car enthusiasts and took over the market.

PRACTICE

1. Match phrasal verbs with their definitions.

- | | |
|--------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. move in on smb | a. continue do smth next |
| 2. get through | b. move forward smth. |
| 3. fill in for smb | c. to succeed |
| 4. hold out smth. | d. give permission to do smth |
| 5. go ahead | e. go to smb to attack |
| 6. go on | f. do smb's job (for a short time) |
| 7. get over | f. finish doing smth |

2. Replace the underlined words with suitable phrasal verbs.

1. The Company offered many fine promises to Jack to get him to work for them.
2. Could you please work instead of me tonight? I need to go to the dentist.
3. Border Patrol agents and Roseau police approached the criminals.
4. He worked hard and succeeded in writing his essay.
5. Having introduced himself Pedro next started to describe gang life.
6. May I borrow your pen? – Sure. You can take it.
7. We've got a lot of work to finish.

3. Complete the sentences with the appropriate phrasal verbs.

1. We have finally _____ with the application forms.
2. I'm working tonight, as I've got to _____ Jenny.
3. _____. What happened next?
4. He _____ his hands for us to see the dirt on them.
5. Bill _____ in the car and I followed on foot.
6. I'll be in touch once I've _____ my exams _____.
7. But now the threat is _____ the elite workers.

C. IDIOMS

Part 1

1. follow one's example – to copy what smb has done because you think that their behaviour or actions were a good idea

Following the example of Nixon, he decided to try to make himself more appealing to voters.

2. run a business – to control and organize a business, organization, etc.

Sheryl's parents run a small clothing business.

3. keep one's distance – to avoid going near smb or smth

If you are driving behind a truck you'd better keep a distance.

4. give smb a hand – help smb

Can you give me a hand with this suitcase?

5. put (in)to use – to make smb or smth work or do smth, or to use it

Computer games are being put to use in the classroom.

to use smth such as knowledge or skills for a particular purpose

This is the job where her management skills can be put to good use.

6. clean forgot – to completely forget smth

He meant to invite Monica, but he clean forgot.

7. crane the neck – to stretch your neck out trying to see smth

She craned her neck to get a better view of the stage.

PRACTICE

1. Complete the sentences with the idioms from the box.

give me a hand	run a business	clean forgot	craned their necks
follow his example	putting it to use	kept his distance	

1. Brian persuaded his brothers to _____ and join the navy.

2. Sorry, I _____ your birthday.

3. Can you _____ with this box? It's really heavy.

4. Village men told her that a woman should not _____.

5. Mark could see that the guy was drunk, so he _____.

6. All the kids _____ to see who Mrs. Miller was talking to.

7. Much of ecology is about this process: finding energy and _____.

Part 2

1. make a note – to write down to remind you of something

Dave made a note of her address and phone number.

2. clear one's throat – to cough gently so as to speak clearly or to get smb's attention

He cleared his throat, and was silent awhile.

3. at all – used in negative statements and questions to emphasize what you are saying

They've done nothing at all to try and put the problem right.

Has the situation improved at all?

4. hold one's breath – to stop breathing for a short time

Hold your breath and count to ten.

to be anxious while you are waiting for smth

He held his breath while the results were read out.

5. take one's time – to do something slowly or carefully without hurrying

Take your time, think the matter over carefully, and then tell me what you've decided.

Marie took her time cutting my hair and did it really well.

6. at once – immediately or without delay

Now, go upstairs at once and clean your room!

together, at the same time

I can't do two things at once!

7. a good sport – smb who does not complain if he / she loses or who does not boast if he / she wins

I beat Ed 5 times at video games today, but he's such a good sport that he bought us a pizza instead.

8. as / so far as smth is concerned – used when you want to talk about a particular thing

As far as money's concerned, there shouldn't be a problem.

As far as traffic is concerned there are no delays at the moment.

as / so far as I am concerned – used when giving your opinion about something

As far as Americans are concerned, a lot of our hotels are below average.

As far as I'm concerned she can come home whenever she likes.

PRACTICE

1. Complete the sentences with the idioms from the box.

at once	take your time	at all	a good sport
held his breath	cleared his throat	as far as ...is concerned	

1. Justin shrank back against the wall and _____.
2. To the hunter, time or space mattered very little, if _____.
3. He coughed and _____ again and looked up at the clerk.
4. _____ the house _____, we would like to have another look at it.
5. Just _____, and speak slowly and clearly.
6. When I saw him I recognized him _____
7. Jack is _____. He never gets upset when he loses.

2. Complete the sentences with the verbs *make* and *do*.

1. I'm going to show you how to _____ a box for your tools.
2. This car will _____ 0 to 60 miles per hour in six seconds.
3. That night in the forest we _____ a shelter from branches and leaves..
4. _____ a list of all the things you need.
5. He's _____ an art course at Wrexham College.
6. Thanks for all you've _____ to help.
7. Neil has _____ well this year in his chemistry class.
8. It's my turn to _____ the dishes.
9. The train is leaving, and Tom isn't here yet. He's not going to _____ it.
10. What he need is something to _____ in his spare time.

D. WORD STUDY

COST ▪ PRICE ▪ CHARGE ▪ FEE ▪ TOLL ▪ RATE ▪ FARE ▪ RENT

1. **cost** – the amount of money you must pay in order to buy, do, or produce smth

Will \$100 cover the cost of books?

costs – the total amount of money that needs to be spent by a business

The use of cheap labor helped to keep costs down.

at no extra cost – without having to pay more

We will deliver and install the equipment at no extra cost.

2. price – the cost of one item or unit

The price is \$49.95. I can't believe how high their prices are.

Fish is lower in price in the coastal towns.

3. charge – the amount of money that smb asks for goods and services

There's a \$70 charge for every extra piece of luggage.

at no extra charge – without having to pay more

Members and their guests are permitted to use the recreational facilities at no extra charge.

4. fee – an amount of money that you pay for professional advice or services

Does the bank charge a fee for setting up the account?

an amount of money that you pay to join an organization, or to do smth

There is no entrance fee to the gallery.

5. rate – the usual cost of a service or job set according to a standard scale

What's the going rate (=the usual amount paid for work) for a piano teacher?

We are able to offer a whole range of services at very reasonable rates.

6. fare – the price you pay to travel by train, plane, bus etc.

Air fares are going up again.

7. toll – the money you have to pay to use a particular road, bridge etc.

There is a toll bridge ahead of us, we need to prepare a quarter.

a **toll-free** number – if you telephone a particular number toll-free, you do not have to pay for the call

*For reservations and hotel enquiries, you can contact us via the **toll free numbers** listed here.*

8. rent – money you pay for the use of things that belong to smb else

Office rents are very high here.

Complete the sentences with the appropriate word.

1. If your order comes to over \$30, we will not make a delivery_____.
2. They charge the same_____ for a takeaway as they do for eating in the restaurant.
3. I worked out the _____ of the repairs.
4. You will have to pay a small admission _____.
5. The cameras range in _____ from \$ 150 to over \$ 600.
6. There's no _____ for using a library.
7. A new computer system has been installed at a _____ of \$80000.
8. Many doctors have a standard scale of _____.
9. Children over five must pay the full _____ for the ticket.
10. What's the _____ on this house now?
11. Tuition _____ at Stanford have now reached \$ 7 000 a year.
12. We have had to raise our prices because of rising _____.
13. Breakfast may be served in your room at no extra _____.
14. Have you given the kids their bus_____?
15. There is a fixed _____ for the job, regardless of how long it takes.
16. Motorway _____ are usually not very high.
17. The landlord has put the _____ up again.
18. British Rail is to announce _____ increases of over 6% next month.
19. How much is the membership fee in this elite club?
20. Hotel _____ advertised are per person, not per room.
21. There is a set _____ of 15% for service.
22. In France you have to pay _____ on many of the major roads.
23. In many countries, you can use an international _____ number to reach the Department's 24/7 Emergency Operations Centre in Ottawa.
24. She had argued with a cab driver after refusing to pay her _____.
25. A cassette is included at no extra _____.

▪ LOOK ▪

1. look after – to take care of someone or something

We look after Rodney's kids after school.

2. look (a)round – to examine (an area, a place, etc.)

They looked around the village before setting off down the mountain.

3. look at – to read something quickly

Jane was looking at a magazine while she waited.

to study and consider smth. in order to decide what to do

The doctor looked at the cut on her head.

4. look down on smb./smth. to regard smb. or smth. as inferior

–

Mr. Garcia looks down on anyone who hasn't had a college education.

5. look forward to to feel excited about smth that is going to happen

–

I'm really looking forward to our vacation.

6. look into – to try to find out the truth about something

The FBI will look into the cause of the fire.

7. look out (for) – to be careful

Look out when you are crossing the road.

8. look up – to try to find information in a book, on a computer etc.

If you don't know the word, look it up in the dictionary.

to visit smb you know, when you go to the place where

they live for another reason

Don't forget to look up my parents when you're in Boston.

9. look up to smb. – admire, have a good opinion of someone.

Frank always looked up to his uncle, who's a self-made man.

Complete the sentences with the correct particle.

1. Jack looked _____ his name on the list but couldn't find it.

2. It's hard work to look _____ three children all day.

3. Would you like me to look _____ your essay before you had it in?
4. Joe's looked _____ their number in the phone book.
5. I'm looking _____ a job at the moment, but it's hard to find one that is suitable.
6. We are looking carefully _____ all options.
7. I had to look several words _____ in the dictionary.
8. Are you looking _____ the wedding?
9. Look me _____ next time you come to Sydney.
10. I'm looking _____ my watch. Have you seen it?
11. Tracy likes tennis but she looks _____ football as too rough.
12. Do we have to pay to look _____ the castle?
13. 'Look _____ for the train,' the sign on the railroad crossing warns.
14. I've always looked _____ Bill for his courage and determination.

E. REVISION

VOCABULARY

1. Choose the word that best completes each sentence.

1. Roses grew _____ against the old wall.
 A. petulantly B. perfunctory C. hastily D. profusely
2. They remain friends, though she is quick to be _____ over favors left undone.
 A. petulant B. boisterous C. interminable D. definite
3. "Nothing is going to change," said Miller _____ after his trial.
 A. defiantly B. cheerfully C. profusely D. perfunctory
4. The thief _____ her purse and ran.
 A. gasped B. snatched C. hushed D. clutched
5. The performance was not a success, as the applause was _____.
 A. profuse B. blank C. perfunctory D. interminable
6. They got out of the car to _____ the damage.
 A. follow B. survey C. remove D. disengage
7. You miss a lot of office _____ when you have a day off work.

- A. chips B. piles C. hush D. gossip
8. The children were severely _____ by the headmaster.
A. fussed B. disengaged C. surveyed D. reprimanded
9. He launched into an _____ monologue about his last therapy session.
A. abundant B. negligent C. interminable D. precise
10. Your kids are so _____ today. They are going to break something
A. boisterous B. shabby C. excessive D. sketchy
11. Your booking will automatically _____ unless you confirm it.
A. survey B. proceed C. reproach D. lapse
12. I can't make the repairs without the _____ tools or materials.
A. proper B. void C. vital D. infinite
13. We need to know your _____ location.
A. blank B. precise C. hasty D. bare
14. _____ all the packaging from the pizza and place it in a preheated oven.
A. Scrutinize B. Snatch C. Remove D. Disconnect
15. Perhaps, I spoke too _____. I can go over some points again.
A. hastily B. shabby C. precisely D. duly

2. Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

profusely	remove	proper	defiantly	reprimanded
duly	gossip	blank	surveyed	boisterous
perfunctory	followed	petulant	precise	interminable

1. The company was _____ and fined \$500 for failing to submit accounts.
2. I was made to feel like a _____ child who has flown into a temper because his favorite toy was removed.
3. It is easier to be soothing with a highly sensitive child who is clingy and frightened than with the one who behaves _____.

4. Thomas's mind seemed to be elsewhere, and there was not even a _____ laugh in return.
5. Researchers _____ 10,000 customers about the quality of companies that they used.
6. She wasn't looking forward to the _____ winter nights, alone in the cabin.
7. The following day, Moira telephoned the Daily Telegraph apologized _____ for the misunderstanding.
8. I don't believe Liz had an affair with him. That's just malicious _____.
9. A large, _____ crowd poured into the bar, singing and shouting noisily.
10. I want to record the late-night movie. Do we have any _____ video cassettes?
11. You can use lemon juice to _____ the grease.
12. With _____ training, most people can learn leadership skills.
13. He _____ her home to find out where she lived.
14. The gift was _____ noted by the Secretary of State in his annual financial disclosure form.
15. There is no _____ method of measuring intelligence.

3. Write the word closest in meaning to the following groups of words.

- | | | | | |
|------------------------|---------------|---------------|-------------|--------------|
| 1. proper | A. excessive | B. correct | C. constant | D. clean |
| 2. reprimand | A. proceed | B. rumor | C. inspect | D. reproach |
| 3. defiant | A. moody | B. careless | C. boring | D. worrying |
| 4. boisterous | A. endless | B. abundant | C. lively | D. severe |
| 5. profuse | A. cheerful | B. plentiful | C. decent | D. sketchy |
| 6. perfunctory | A. bountiful | B. acceptable | C. vital | D. negligent |
| 7. interminable | A. infinite | B. unmarked | C. daring | D. ambiguous |
| 8. survey | A. arise | B. scrutinize | C. coerce | D. grasp |
| 9. petulant | A. rebellious | B. accurate | C. noisy | D. irritable |
| 10. lapse | A. withdraw | B. loosen | C. expire | D. compel |

- | | | | | |
|--------------------|-------------|----------------|--------------|--------------|
| 11. remove | A. clutch | B. delete | C. eliminate | D. divide |
| 12. precise | A. definite | B. serious | C. empty | D. constant |
| 13. force | A. separate | B. impose on | C. grab | D. take away |
| 14. hasty | A. hurried | B. peevish | C. bare | D. excited |
| 15. blank | A. exact | B. unambiguous | C. real | D. void |

4. Write the word the most opposite to the following groups of words.

- | | | | | |
|-----------------------|--------------|----------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1. snatch | A. observe | B. grasp | C. drop | D. loosen |
| 2. precise | A. careless | B. exact | C. void | D. vital |
| 3. defiant | A. daring | B. cooperative | C. endless | D. unmarked |
| 4. boisterous | A. excited | B. impulsive | C. abundant | D. calm |
| 5. profuse | A. plentiful | B. scarce | C. accurate | D. rebellious |
| 6. perfunctory | A. noisy | B. careless | C. diligent | D. correct |
| 7. hasty | A. fast | B. slow | C. clean | D. right |
| 8. reprimand | A. praise | B. proceed | C. disconnect | D. scold |
| 9. petulant | A. moody | B. peevish | C. negligent | D. cheerful |
| 10. shabby | A. severe | B. worn out | C. bare | D. new |

PHRASAL VERBS

Complete the sentences with the appropriate phrasal verbs.

- Mark _____ the list of movies he'd seen.
- My parents want me to marry Jim and _____.
- She _____ the driver's seat.
- Start reading from where you _____ last time.
- Immigration agents _____ a nursing home operator who hired illegal aliens.
- He _____ the keys and I took them.
- Sure, _____ and buy a used car from Slipshod Acme car company.
- We've got a lot of work to _____.

9. We're going to France next week. I'm really _____ it.
10. We need to _____ very carefully _____ ways of improving our efficiency.
11. I'm leaving you here to _____ the business until I get back.
12. He always _____ his toys when he's finished playing with them.
13. An officer is _____ some statistics about the aid program.
14. The audience _____ loud applause.

IDIOMS

Complete the sentences with the appropriate idioms.

1. I'd like a job where I could _____ my degree in languages ____ good _____.
2. Just _____ your _____. You don't have to decide immediately.
3. Everyone knew _____ how serious the situation was.
4. He did not do anything _____ to solve the problem.
5. _____, you can forget about it.
6. Patrice _____ her _____, waiting for Lettie's reply.
7. Don't worry. I can _____ my _____ to the beach.
8. The police _____ during the students' demonstration.
9. Can you _____ me _____ with the essay?
10. He _____ his _____ to see over the heads of the crowd.
11. I don't know how to _____.
12. If you have any complaints, let me know and I'll _____ of them.

II. GRAMMAR FOCUS

1. Write the negative prefixes in-, im-, un-, dis-.

_____ clear _____ willing _____ polite _____ honest _____ formal
 _____ secure _____ perfect _____ fair _____ frequent _____ fold
 _____ precise _____ proper _____ official _____ successful _____ necessary

2. Complete the sentences with the words from Exercise 1.

1. The police say the motive for the attack is still _____.
2. Jerry felt very _____ when he started at his new school.
3. The president flew home today after another _____ attempt to reach agreement.
4. It would be _____ to leave the party so early.
5. Jane was _____ to admit she was wrong.
6. It was _____ to take advantage of the situation.
7. His use of language is vague and _____.
8. Democracy, no matter how _____, is still the best method of government.
9. The two groups met for _____ talks.
10. Rain is _____ in this normally hot, dry region of the world.
11. Many cases of stomach flu result from _____ cooking of food.
12. The President made an _____ visit to the Senator's house.
13. People on welfare are wrongly seen as lazy or _____.
14. Eileen struggled to _____ a large map.
15. There's no point in taking _____ risks.

3. Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions.

1. _____ the way home we saw a terrible car accident.
2. I want to be home _____ time for tea.
3. Is your name _____ the list?
4. He is performing as well as _____ any time in his career.
5. The train was _____ time.
6. Some families have lived here _____ generations.
7. Thousands of refugees are making their way _____ the border.
8. We sat _____ the front row.
9. Things will get better _____ time.
10. There was a strong smell of burning _____ the air.
11. He called out _____ a loud voice.
12. He comes home _____ his dinner, then goes back to the factory.

4. Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions.

1. You can substitute chicken _____ beef if you don't like red meat.
2. He wasn't sorry _____ hitting the other boy.
3. Bob is pretty good _____ fixing things.
4. The train arrived _____ the station 20 minutes late.
5. There is no one to guard the area _____ possible attack.
6. They wished to disengage themselves _____ these policies.
7. She grinned amiably _____ us.
8. Ralph tapped me _____ the shoulder.
9. She'll arrive _____ New York at noon.
10. They were successful _____ winning the contract.

5. Complete the sentences with infinitive and gerunds.

1. My car tends _____ in the summer. (overheat)
2. She remembers _____ him leave an hour ago. (see)
3. Customers didn't use _____ from home. (shop)
4. I like him because he makes me _____ (laugh).
5. I seem _____ forgotten your name. (have)
6. Remember _____ me a call when your plane lands. (give)
7. Don't forget _____ the door when you leave. (lock)
8. Deborah was used _____ on difficult assignments. (work)
9. I stepped back and let him _____. (pass)
10. Suddenly the rain began _____. (fall)
11. I keep _____ my pills. (forget)
12. You'd better _____ Julie to say you'll be late. (phone)
13. We do not allow people _____ anywhere in the building. (smoke)
14. The pole was just long enough _____ the top window. (reach)

6. Complete the sentences using the correct form of *say* or *tell*.

1. He _____ me not to eat for several days.
2. Dad used to _____ us bedtime stories.
3. Did she _____ what time to come?
4. Did you _____ Jennifer about the party?
5. Every time I want to cook, Mom _____ “no”.
6. She’s only five – she hasn’t learned to _____ the time yet. .
7. The card doesn't even _____ who sent the flowers.
8. He _____ to his mother that he would call back later.
9. Tell her I _____ ‘hi’.
10. "How long will it take?" "It's hard to _____."
11. That’s a terrible thing to _____.
12. Sometimes it’s difficult to _____ the difference between reality and myth.
13. The clock _____ quarter after six.
14. Can you _____ Tom from his twin brother?
15. He received a letter _____ that the appointment had been cancelled.
16. 'He's such a pain to live with.' 'You're _____ me!'

7. Rewrite the sentences using the verbs in the box.

refuse	promise	want to know	remind
allow	insist	agree	warn
announce	wonder	declare	exclaim

1. “I’ll take the job,”

2. “I will write to you soon,” said Mary.

3. “No, I won’t tell you the answer”, said Polly.

4. “You can leave early,” the teacher said.

5. "What time is it now, I wonder?" asked Bill.

6. "What are your plans for the weekend?" asked Jim.

7. "You should be careful.

8. "An arrest will be made within 24 hours," the police said.

9. "The vote is invalid."

10. "I really must leave"

11. "Don't forget to sign the form."

12. "This is my first time in Paris besides being on the Vogue cover and I love it,"

8. Rewrite the sentences in Reported speech using the verb *offer*.

1. "Shall I help you?"

2. "I'll carry the boxes?"

3. "Let me carry that for you."

4. "Allow me to finish this."

5. "Can I help you take the clothes off the line?"

6. "Would you like me to help you with the baggage?"

7. "The knife is blunt. Do you want me to sharpen it?"

9. Rewrite the sentences in Reported speech using the verb *suggest*.

1. "Shall we go home?"

2. "Let's go to the park!"
3. "How about going home."
4. "Why don't we try sushi?"
5. "Why don't we share the cost of accommodation?"
6. "Would you like to go to the movies?"
7. "What about renting an apartment?"

10. Rewrite the sentences in Reported speech using the verbs *offer* and *suggest*.

1. "Shall we buy some new furniture?"
2. I'll replace the bulb.
3. "Why don't we postpone the meeting?"
4. "Let's eat now!"
5. "Do you want me to delete these programs?"
6. "What about consulting the doctor."
7. "Let me check your essay."
8. "Would you like me get the box and pack things?"
9. "How about opening an office downtown?"
10. "Shall I turn on the air conditioner?"
11. "Can I leave a message for Carol?"
12. "Would you like to go out tonight?"

11. Rewrite the following commands, requests, offers, and suggestions in Reported speech.

1. "Don't look down!"
2. "Shall we have some lunch?"
3. "Don't spend too much money on your holiday."
4. "Why don't you keep your promise?"
5. "Shall I help you with the form?"
6. "Please, give me some money."
7. "Would you come this way, please?"
8. "You must not smoke in the petrol store!"

9. "Would you like to stay with us?"
10. "Turn left at the traffic lights."
11. "Could you deposit this check at the bank for me?"
12. "How about if we stay for lunch?"
13. "Let's come together."
14. "Would you leave her alone?"
15. "Can I fix your watch?"

12. Underline the correct linking word / phrase.

1. The lecture was boring. *Consequently / Because* Tom fell asleep.
2. *The reason for / As* the buses were on strike, Mr. Smith had to take a taxi.
3. She missed the bus. *Therefore / Since* she was late for the meeting.
4. She failed the exam, *due to / because* she hadn't worked hard enough.
5. Their car was bigger and *since / therefore* more comfortable.
6. *Due to / As a result* bad weather, many flights have been cancelled.
7. He was afraid that he wouldn't be able to control children. *As a result / The reason for that* was that he had never had to manage large groups of them.
8. It was raining hard, *because / as a consequence* they didn't go for a walk.
9. *The reason why / Since* his best shirt was dirty, he couldn't wear it to the party.
10. She was late for work, *as / therefore* she didn't hear her alarm clock.

13. Join the ideas, using the correct words / phrases in brackets.

1. He called me. He heard the news. (While / As soon as)
_____.
2. The hotel was too expensive. It was very close to the freeway. (Besides / However)
_____.
3. She didn't work hard enough. She failed the exam. (Moreover / Consequently)
_____.
4. The value of this stock rose 17% last year. Analysts say it should continue to increase this year. (Moreover / Nevertheless)

5. Sales are low this month. There may be an increase before Christmas.
(However / Moreover)

6. Ronald Reagan joined the Republican Party in 1962. And became Governor of California. (later / as soon as)

7. It was getting dark. The plane took off. (later / when)

8. Budget reports aren't trusted. Managers are refusing to believe the budget reports.
(While / Consequently)

9. I'm calling him. I want to ask him for a favor. (The reason why /Whereas)

10. Traffic will become heavier. Air pollution is increasing. (Moreover / Therefore)

11. The building work is taking quite a long time. And this costs us money.
(therefore / like)

12. Sales of existing homes went up 2% last month. Construction of new homes rose as well. (Similarly / Nevertheless)

III. AFTER READING THOUGHTS

A. UNDERSTANDING THE STORY

PART 1

1. When does the lottery usually start?
2. When did the lottery start in the village?
3. How long did the lottery take? Why?
4. What did different people talk before the lottery start? (children, men, women)

5. Who conducted the lottery?
6. What was used for drawing long ago?
7. What part of the ritual was discarded?
8. Who was the last to come to the square?

PART 2

1. Why did Mrs. Dunbar draw for her husband?
2. Who usually draws for missing family members?
3. Did people unfold the paper as soon as they took it out of the box?
4. Who said "Lottery in June, corn be heavy soon?"
5. What did Mr. Adams and Old Man Warner talk about?
6. How long has Warner been in lottery?
7. Who drew the paper with the black spot?

B. READING BETWEEN THE LINES

PART 1

1. Why was Mr. Summers the official of the lottery?
2. Why were villagers reluctant about making a new box?
3. Why did villagers substitute chips of wood for the slips of paper?
4. Why do you think people in some villages conduct the lottery?

PART 2

1. How did people feel after they drew papers?
2. What did Warner think about the lottery?
3. Why do you think people in some villages quit the lottery?
4. Why do you think Mrs Hutchinson insisted that her daughters draw with their family?

C. ANALYZING THE STORY

1. Use the linking words / phrases from the box to make logical stories.

When	By the time	Then	Suddenly
The moment	By that time	Next	All of a sudden
The instant	Before that	Later	Out of the blue
As soon as	Up until then	Following this	(Un) fortunately
While / As		After that	Luckily

begin to gather in → talk about → stuff one's pockets with → follow one's example →
make a pile of stones → begin to gather → speak of → talk → survey → come → exchange
bits of gossip → arrive in the square → set the box on → stir up the papers → use chips of
wood → make up lists of people → turn to the villagers → come along

2. Complete the chain of events in accordance with the story. Use linking words and phrases from Ex. 1 to make logically connected statements.

a. THE FIRST DRAWING

Mr. Summers (consult) the list → → People (open) slips of papers.

People (begin) to look around to see the Hutchinsons → → Bill Hutchinson
(reach) into the box.

Mr. Graves (open) the slip of paper → → People (be) upon Tessie

D. SHARING IDEAS

1. Discuss why Tessie questioned the tradition and correctness of the lottery only after she drew the paper with the black spot?
2. Discuss what would happen if little Dave drew the paper with the black spot?

3. There is a saying “Human nature is unfair” How does it apply to the story you have just read?

E. WRITING

1. Pretend you are a newspaper reporter covering the story of this town’s lottery. Write an eyewitness account of what you observe.

2. Sh. Jackson uses a surprise ending in her story. Imagine another effective ending of the story “Lottery”.

UNIT III

Gryphon

by Charles Baxter

PART 1

On Wednesday afternoon, between the geography lesson on ancient Egypt's hand-operated irrigation system and an art project that involved drawing a model city next to a mountain, our fourth grade teacher, Mr. Hibler, developed a cough within Mr. "Listen to him," Carol Peterson whispered to me. "He's gonna blow up." Mr. Hibler's laughter – dazed and infrequent – sounded a bit like his cough, but as we worked on our model cities we would look up, thinking he was enjoying a joke, and see Mr. Hibler's face turning red, his cheeks puffed out. This was not laughter. Twice he bent over, and his loose tie, like a plumb line, hung down straight from his neck as he exploded himself into a Kleenex. He would excuse himself, then go on coughing, "I'll bet you a dime," Carol Peterson whispered, "we get a substitute tomorrow." I knew I'd lose the dime. "No deal," I said.

When Mr. Hibler stood us in formation at the door just prior to the final bell, he was almost incapable of speech. "I'm sorry, boys and girls," he said. "I seem to be coming down with something." "I hope you feel better tomorrow, Mr. Hibler," Bobby Kryzanowicz, the faultless brown-noser, said, and I heard Carol Peterson's evil giggle. Then Mr. Hibler opened the door and we walked out to the buses.

Since Five Oaks was a rural community, and in Michigan, the supply of substitute teachers was limited to the town's unemployed community college graduates, a pool of about four mothers. Therefore it was a surprise when a woman we had never seen came into the class the next day, carrying a purple purse, a checkerboard lunchbox, and a few books. She put the books on one side of Mr. Hibler's desk and the lunchbox on the other, next to the Voice of Music phonograph. Three of us in the back of the room were playing with Heever, the chameleon that lived in a terrarium and on one of the plastic

drapes, when she walked in.

She clapped her hands at us. "Little boys," she said, "why are you bent over together like that?" She didn't wait for us to answer. "Are you tormenting an animal? Put it back. Please sit down at your desks. With white and green chalk, she had started to draw a tree on the left side of the blackboard. She didn't look usual. Furthermore, her tree was outsized disproportionate, for some reason.

"This room needs a tree," she said, with one line drawing the suggestion of a leaf. "A large, leafy, shady, deciduous... oak." Her fine, light hair had been done up in what I would learn years later was called a chignon, and she wore gold-rimmed glasses whose lenses seemed to have the faintest blue tint. Harold Knardahl, who sat across from me, whispered, "Mars," and I nodded slowly, savoring the imminent weirdness of the day. The substitute drew another branch with an extravagant arm gesture, then turned around and said, "Good morning. I don't believe I said good morning to all of you yet."

Facing us, she was no special age — an adult is an adult—but her face had two prominent lines, descending vertically from the sides of her mouth to her chin. I knew where I had seen those lines before: Pinocchio. They were marionette lines. "You may stare at me," she said to us, as a few more kids from the last bus came into the room, their eyes fixed on her, "for a few more seconds, until the bell rings. Then I will permit no more staring. Looking I will permit. Staring, no. It is impolite to stare, and a sign of bad breeding. You cannot make a social effort while staring."

Harold Knardahl did not glance at me, or nudge, but I heard him whisper "Mars" again, trying to get more mileage out of his single joke with the kids who had just come in. When everyone was seated, the substitute teacher finished her tree, and faced us. "Good morning," she said. "I am Miss Ferenczi, your teacher for the day. I am fairly new to your community, and I don't believe any of you know me. I will therefore start by telling you a story about myself."

While we settled back, she launched into her tale. She said her grandfather had been a Hungarian prince; her mother had been born in some place called Flanders, had been a pianist, and had played concerts for people Miss Ferenczi referred to as "crowned heads."

Her eyes searched the ceiling. Our eyes followed. Nothing up there but ceiling tile. "For reasons that I shall not go into, my family's fortunes took us to Detroit, then north to dreadful Saginaw, and now here I am in Five Oaks, as your substitute teacher, for today, Thursday, October the eleventh. I believe it will be a good day: all the forecasts coincide. We shall start with your reading lesson. Take out your reading book. I believe it is called Broad Horizons, or something along those lines."

Jeannie Vermeesch raised her hand. Miss Ferenczi nodded at her. "Mr. Hibler always starts the day with the Pledge of Allegiance," Jeannie whined.

"Oh, does he? In that case," Miss Ferenczi said, "you must know it very well by now, and we certainly need not spend our time on it. No, no allegiance – pledging on the premises today, by my reckoning. Not with so much sunlight coming into the room. A pledge does not suit my mood." She glanced at her watch. Time is flying. Take out Broad Horizons She disappointed us by giving us an ordinary lesson, complete with vocabulary and drills, comprehension questions, and recitation. She didn't seem to care for the material, however. She sighed every few minutes and rubbed her glasses with a frilly handkerchief that she withdrew, magician-style, from her left sleeve.

After reading we moved on to arithmetic. We were doing multiplication tables. Miss Ferenczi had made John Wazny stand up at his desk in the front row. He was supposed to go through the tables of six. He was doing fine until he came to six times eleven and six times twelve. "Six times eleven," he said, "is sixty-eight. Six times twelve is..." He put his fingers to his head, quickly and secretly sniffed his fingertips, and said, "... seventy-two." Then he sat down.

"Fine," Miss Ferenczi said. "Well, now. That was very good."

"Miss Ferenczi!" One of the Eddy twins was waving her hand desperately in the air. "Miss Ferenczi! Miss, Ferenczi!" "Yes?"

"John said that six times eleven is sixty-eight and you said he was right!"

"Did I?" She gazed at the class with a jolly look breaking across her marionette's face. "Did I say that? Well, what is six times eleven?" - "It's sixty six."

She nodded. "Yes. So it is. But, and I know some people will not entirely agree

with me, at some times it is sixty-eight."

"When? When is it sixty-eight?" We were all waiting.

"In higher mathematics, which you children do not yet understand, six times eleven can be considered to be sixty-eight." She laughed through her nose. "In higher mathematics numbers are ... more fluid. The only thing a number does is contain a certain amount of something. Think of water. A cup is not the only way to measure a certain amount of water, is it?" We were staring, shaking our heads. "You could use saucepans or thimbles. In either case, the water would be the same. Perhaps," she started again, "it would be better for you to think that six times eleven is sixty-eight only when I am in the room."

"Why is it, sixty-eight," Mark Poole asked, "when you're in the room?"

"Because it's more interesting that way," she said, smiling very rapidly behind her blue-tinted glasses. "Besides, I'm your substitute teacher, am I not?" We all nodded. "Well, then, think of six times eleven equals sixty-eight as a substitute fact".

"A substitute fact?"

"Yes." Then she looked at us carefully. "Do you think," she asked, "that anyone is going to be hurt by a substitute fact?" We looked back at her.

"Will the plants on the windowsill be hurt?" We glanced at them. She waited "So," she concluded, "what's the problem?"

"But it's wrong," Janice Weber said, "isn't it."

You are free to think what you like. When your teacher, Mr. Hibler, returns, six times eleven will be sixty-six again, you can rest assured. And it will be that for the rest of your lives in Five Oaks. Too bad, eh?" She raised her eyebrows and glinted herself at us. "But for now, it wasn't. So much for that. Let us go on to your assigned problems for today, as painstakingly outlined, I see, in Mr. Hibler's lesson plan. Take out a sheet of paper and write your names on the upper left-hand corner."

For the next half hour we did the rest of our arithmetic problems. We handed them in and then went on to spelling, my worst subject. Spelling always came before lunch. We were taking spelling dictation and looking at the clock. "Thorough," Miss Ferenczi

said. "Boundary." She walked in the aisles between the desks, holding the spelling book open and looking down at our papers. "Balcony." I clutched my pencil. Somehow, the way she said those words, they seemed foreign, mis-voweled and mis-consonanted. I stared down at what I had spelled. Balconie. I turned the pencil upside down and erased my mistake. Balconey. That looked better, but still incorrect. I cursed the world of spelling and tried erasing it again and saw the paper beginning to wear away. Balkony. Suddenly I felt a hand on my shoulder. "I don't like that word either," Miss Feienczi whispered, bent over, her mouth near my ear, "It's ugly. My feeling is, if you don't like a word, you don't have to use it." She straightened up, leaving behind a slight odor of Clorets.

PART 2

At lunchtime we went out to get our trays of sloppy joes, peaches in heavy syrup, coconut cookies, and milk, and brought them back to the classroom, where Miss Ferenczi was sitting at the desk, eating a brown sticky thing she had unwrapped from tightly rubber-banded waxed-paper. "Miss Ferenczi," I said, raising my hand. "You don't have to eat with us. You can eat with the other teachers. There's a teachers' lounge," I ended up, "next to the principal's office."

"No, thank you," she said. "I prefer it here."

"That's fine! Miss Ferenezi said "Bui I shall continue to eat here, with you children. I prefer it," she repeated.

"How come?" Wayne Razmer asked without raising his hand.

"I talked to the other teachers before class this morning," Miss Ferenezi said, biting into her brown food. "There was a great rattling of the words for the fewness of the ideas. I didn't care for their brand of hilarity. I don't like ditto machine jokes."

"What's that you're eating?" Maxine Sylvester asked, twitching her nose. "Is it food?"

"It most certainly is food. It's a stuffed fig. I had to drive almost down to Detroit to get it. I also, brought some smoked sturgeon. And this," she said, lifting some green leaves out of her lunchbox, "is raw spinach, cleaned this morning."

" Why're you eating raw spinach?" Maxine asked;

"It's good for you," Miss Ferenczi said. "More stimulating than soda pop or smelling salts."

"Miss Ferenczi," Carol Peterson said, "what are we going to do this afternoon?"

"Well," she said, looking down at Mr. Hibler's lesson plan, "I see that your teacher, Mr. Hibler has you scheduled for a unit on the Egyptians." Carol groaned. "Yessss," Miss Ferenczi continued, "that is what we will do: the Egyptians. A remarkable people. Almost as remarkable as the Americans. But not quite." She lowered her head, did her quick smile, and went back to eating her spinach.

After noon recess we came back into the classroom and saw that Miss Ferenczi had drawn a pyramid on the blackboard close to her oak tree. Some of us who had been playing baseball were messing around in the back of the room, dropping the bats and gloves into the playground box, and Ray Schontzeler had just slugged me when I heard Miss Ferenczi's high-pitched voice, quavering with emotion.

"Boys," she said, "come to order right this minute and take your seats. I do not wish to waste a minute of class time. Take out your geography books."

We trudged to our desks and, still sweating, pulled out 'Distant Lands and Their People'.

"Turn to page forty-two. I note from Mr. Hibler's lesson plan that you have been discussing the modes of Egyptian irrigation. Interesting, in my view, but not so interesting as what we are about to cover, the pyramids, and Egyptian slave labor. A plus on one side, a minus on the other."

We had our books open to page forty-two, where there was a picture of a pyramid, but Miss Ferenczi wasn't looking at the book. Instead, she was staring at some object just outside the window.

"Pyramids," Miss Ferenczi said, still looking past the window. "I want you to think about pyramids. And what was inside. The bodies of the pharaohs, of course and their attendant treasures. Scrolls. Perhaps," Miss Ferenczi said, her face gleeful but unsmiling, "these scrolls were novels for the pharaohs, helping them to pass the time in their long voyage through the centuries. "Pyramids," Miss Ferenczi went on, "were the repositories of

special cosmic powers. The nature of a pyramid is to guide cosmic energy forces into a concentrated point. The Egyptians knew that; we have generally forgotten it. Did you know," she asked, walking to the side of the room so that she was standing by the coat closet, "that George Washington had Egyptian blood, from his grandmother? Certain features of the Constitution of the United States are notable for their Egyptian ideas.

Without glancing down at the book, she began to talk about the movement of souls in Egyptian religion. She said that when people die, their souls return to Earth in the form of carpenter ants or walnut trees, depending on how they behaved – "well or ill" - in life. She was speaking very fast. She said that the Egyptians were great explorers and conquerors. She said that the greatest of all the conquerors, Genghis Khan, had had forty horses and forty young women killed on the site of his grave. We listened. No one tried to stop her. "I myself have been in Egypt" she said, "and have witnessed much dust and many brutalities." She said that an old man in Egypt who worked for a circus had personally shown her an animal in a cage, a monster, half bird and half lion. She said that this monster was called a gryphon and that she had heard about them but never seen them until she traveled to the outskirts of Cairo. She wrote the word out on the blackboard in large capital letters: GRYPHON. She said that the Egyptians were the first to discover that dogs, when they were ill, will not drink from rivers, but wait for rain, and hold their jaws open to catch it.

"She lies." We were on the school bus home. I was sitting next to Carl Whiteside, who had bad breath and a huge collection of marbles. We were arguing. Carl thought she was lying, I said she wasn't probably.

"I didn't believe that stuff about the bird," Carl said, "and what she told us about the pyramids? I didn't believe that, either, She didn't know what she was talking about."

"Oh yeah?" I had liked her. She was strange. I thought I could nail him. "If she was lying," I said, "what'd she say that was a lie?"

"Six times eleven isn't sixty-eight. It isn't ever. It's It's sixty-six, I know for a fact."

"SHE SAID SO. SHE ADMITTED IT. WHAT ELSE DID SHE LIE ABOUT?"

"I don't know," he said. "Stuff"

"What stuff?"

"Well. " He swung his legs back and forth. "You ever see an animal that was half lion and half bird?" He crossed his arms. "It sounded real fakey to me."

"It could happen," I said. I had to improvise, to outrage him. "I read in this newspaper my mom bought in the IGA about this scientist, this mad scientist in the Swiss Alps, and he's been putting genes and chromosomes and stuff together in test tubes, and he combined a human being and a hamster." I waited, for effect. "It's called a hamster."

"You never." Carl was staring at me, his mouth open; his terrible bad breath making its way toward me. "What newspaper was it?"

"The National Enquirer," I said, "that they sell next to the cash registers." When I saw his look of recognition, I knew I had him, "And this mad scientist" I said, "his name was, um, Dr. Frankenstein."

"A man and a hamster?" He was staring at me, squinting, his mouth opening in distaste, "Jeez. What'd it look like?"

When the bus reached my stop, I took off down our dirt road and ran up through the backyard; kicking the tire swing for good luck. I dropped my books on the back steps so I could hug and kiss our dog, Mr. Selby. Then I hurried inside. "Hi, mom," I said, hopping around the playpen to kiss her. "Guess what?"

"I have no idea."

"We had this substitute today, Miss Ferenczi, and I'd never seen her before, and she had all these stories and ideas and stuff."

"Well. That's good." My mother looked out the window in front of the sink, her eyes on the pine woods west of our house. That time of the afternoon her skin always looked so white to me. Strangers always said my mother looked like Betty Crocker, framed by the giant spoon on the side of the Bisquick box. "Listen, Tommy," she said. "Would you please go upstairs and pick your clothes off the floor in the

bathroom, and then go outside to the shed and put the shovel and ax away that your father left outside this morning?"

"She said that six times eleven was sometimes sixty-eight!" I said "And she said she once saw a monster that was half lion and half bird." I waited. "In Egypt" "Did you hear me?" my mother asked, raising her arm to wipe her forehead with the back of her hand. "You have chores to do."

"I know," I said, "I was just telling you about the substitute." "It's very interesting," my mother said, quickly glancing down at me, "and we can talk about it later when your father gets home. But right now you have some work to do."

"Okay, Mom." I took a cookie out of the jar on the counter and was about to go outside when I had a thought. I ran into the living room, pulled out a dictionary next to the TV stand, and opened it to the Gs. After five minutes I found it. Gryphon: variant of griffin. Griffin: "a fabulous beast with the head and wings of an eagle and the body of a lion." Fabulous was right. I shouted with triumph and ran outside to put my father's tools in their proper places.

PART 3

Miss Ferenczi was back the next day, slightly altered. She had pulled her hair down and twisted it into pigtails, with red rubber bands holding them tight one inch from the ends. She was wearing a green blouse and pink scarf, making her difficult to look at for a full class day. This time there was no pretense of doing a reading lesson or moving on to arithmetic. As soon as the bell rang, she simply began to talk.

She talked for forty minutes straight. There seemed to be less connection between her ideas, but the ideas themselves were, as the dictionary would say, fabulous. She said the biggest diamond in the world was cursed and had killed everyone who owned it, and that by a trick of fate it was called the Hope Diamond. Diamonds are magic, she said, and this is why women wear them on their fingers. George Washington had died because of a mistake made about a diamond. Washington was not the first true President, but she didn't say who was. In some places in the world, she said, men and women still live

in the trees and eat monkeys for breakfast. Their doctors are magicians.

There was not a sound in the classroom, except for Miss Ferenczi's voice, and Donna DeShano's coughing. No one even went to the bathroom. Beethoven, she said, had not been deaf; it was a trick to make himself famous, and it worked. There are trees in the world, she said, that eat meat: their leaves are sticky and close up on bugs like hands. She lifted her hands and brought them together, palm to palm. She said that unquenchable fires burn just under the surface of the earth in Ohio "I know you children like to hear these things, she said, "these secrets, and that is why I am telling you all this." We nodded. It was better than doing comprehension questions for the readings in *Broad Horizons*.

"I will tell you one more story," "and then we will have to do arithmetic." She leaned over, and her voice grew soft. "There is no death," she said. "You must never be afraid. Never. That which is, cannot die. It will change into different earthly and unearthly elements, but I know this as sure as I stand here in front of you, and I swear it: you must not be afraid. I have seen this truth with these eyes. I know it because in a dream God kissed me. Here" And she pointed with her right index finger to the side of her head, below the mouth where the vertical lines were carved into her skin.

Absentmindedly we all did our arithmetic problems. At recess the class was out on the playground but no one was playing. We were all standing in small groups, talking about Miss Ferenczi. We didn't know if she was crazy, or what. On the way home, Carl sat next to me again. He didn't say much, and I didn't either. At last he turned to me. "You know what she said about the leaves that close up on bugs?" "Huh?"

"The leaves," Carl insisted. "The meat-eating plants. I know it's true. I saw it on television. The leaves have this icky glue that the plants have got smeared all over them and the insects can't get off "cause they're stuck. I saw it" He seemed demoralized: "She's tellin' the truth." "Yeah."

Coughing mutedly Mr. Hibler was back the next day, slipping lozenges into his mouth when his back was turned at forty-five-minute intervals and asking us how much of his prepared lesson plan Miss Ferenczi had followed. Edith Atwater took the responsibility for the class of explaining to Mr. Hibler that the substitute hadn't always done exactly

what he, Mr. Hibler, would have done, but we had worked hard even though she talked a lot. About what? he asked. All kinds of things, Edith said. I sort of forgot. To our relief, Mr. Hibler seemed not at all interested in what Miss Ferenczi had said to fill the day. He probably thought it was woman's talk: unserious and not suited for school. It was enough that he had a pile of arithmetic problems from us to correct.

And then in early December, four days after the first permanent snowfall, she appeared again in our classroom. The minute she came in the door, I felt my heart begin to pound. Once again, she was different this time, her hair hung straight down, and seemed hardly to have been combed. She hadn't brought her lunchbox with her; but she was carrying what seemed to be a small box. She greeted all of us and talked about the weather. Donna DeShano had to remind her to take her overcoat off.

When the bell to start the day finally rang, Miss Ferenczi looked out at all of us and said, "Children, I have enjoyed your company in the past, and today I am going to reward you." She held up the small box. "Do you know what this is?" She waited. "Of course you don't. It is a Tarot pack."

Edith Atwater raised her hand. "What's a Tarot pack, Miss Ferenczi?"

"It is used to tell fortunes," she said. "And that is what I shall do this morning. I shall tell your fortunes, as I have been taught to do."

"What's fortune?" Bobby Kryzaowicz asked. "The future, young man. I shall tell you what your future will be. I can't do your whole future, of course. I shall have to limit myself to the five-card system, the wands, cups, swords, pentacles, and the higher arcans. Now who wants to be first?" There was a long silence. Then Carol Peterson raised her hand.

"All right," Miss Ferenczi said. She divided the pack into five smaller packs and walked back to Carol's desk, in front of mine. "Pick one card from each one of these packs," she said; I saw that Carol had a four of cups and a six of swords, but I couldn't see the other cards. Miss Ferenczi studied the cards on Carol's desk for a minute. "Not bad, ' she said. "I do not see much higher education. Probably an early marriage. Many children. There's something bleak and dreary here, but I can't tell what. Perhaps just the tasks of housewife life. I think you'll do very well, for the most part." She smiled at

Carol, a smile with a certain lack of interest. "Who wants to be the next?" Carl Whiteside raised his hand slowly.

"Yes," Miss Ferenczi said, "let's do a boy. She walked over to where Carl sat. After he picked his five cards, she gazed at them for a long time. "Travel," she said. "Much distant travel. You might go into the army. Not too much romantic interest here. A late marriage, if at all. But the Sun in your major arcana, that's a very good card." She giggled. "You'll have a happy life."

Next I raised my hand. She told me my future. She did the same with Bobby Kryzanowicz, Kelly Munger, Edith Atwater, and Kim Foor. Then she came to Wayne Razmer. He picked his five cards and I could see that the Death card was one of them.

"What's your name?" Miss Ferenczi asked. "Wayne."

"Well, Wayne," she said, "you will undergo a great metamorphosis, a change, before you become an adult. Your earthly element will no doubt leap higher, because you seem to be a sweet boy. This card, this nine of swords, tells me of suffering and desolation. And this ten of wands, well, that's a heavy load."

"What about this one?" Wayne pointed at the Death card.

"It means, my sweet, that you will die soon." She gathered up the cards. We were all looking at Wayne. "But do not fear," she said. "It is not really death. Just change. Out of your earthly shape." She put the cards on Mr. Hibler's desk. "And now, let's do some arithmetic."

At lunchtime Wayne went to Mr. Faegre, the principal, and informed him of what Miss Ferenczi had done. During the noon recess, we saw Miss Ferenczi drive out of the parking lot in her rusting green Rambler American. I saw Wayne come out to the playground. He smiled, the dead fool, and with the fingers of his right hand he was showing everyone how he had told on Miss Ferenczi. I made my way toward Wayne, pushing myself past two girls from another class. He was watching me with his little pinhead eyes.

"You told," I shouted at him. "She was just kidding." "She should have", he shouted back. We were supposed to be doing arithmetic".

"She just scared you," I said. "You're a chicken. You're a chicken, Wayne. Wayne fell at me, his two fists hammering down on my nose. I gave him a good one in the stomach and then I tried for his head. Aiming my fist, I saw that he was crying. I slugged him. "She was right," I yelled. "She was always right! She told the truth!" And then large hands pulled at us, and it was my turn to speak to Mr. Faegre.

In the afternoon Miss Ferenczi was gone, and our class had been combined with Mrs. Mantei's sixth-grade class for a crowded afternoon science unit on insect life in ditches and swamps. I knew where Mrs. Mantei lived: she had a new house trailer just down the road from us, at the Clearwater Park. She was no mystery. Somehow she and Mr. Bodine, the other fourth-grade teacher, had managed to fit forty-five desks into the room. Kelly Munger asked if Miss Ferenczi had been arrested, and Mrs. Mantei said no, of course not. All that afternoon, until the buses came to pick us up, we learned about field crickets and two-striped grasshoppers, water bugs, cicadas, mosquitoes, flies, and moths. We learned about insects' hard outer shell, the exoskeleton, and the usual parts of the mouth, including the labrum, mandible, maxilla, and glossa. Mrs. Mantei drew, very skillfully, the internal anatomy of the grasshopper on the blackboard. We found out about which insects were pests to man, and which were not. On lined white pieces of paper we made lists of insects we might actually see, then a list of insects too small to be clearly visible, such as fleas; Mrs. Mantei said that our assignment would be to memorize these lists for the next day, when Mr. Hibler would certainly return and test us on our knowledge.

I LANGUAGE FOCUS

A. VOCABULARY

Part 1

1. develop – to become ill with a particular illness

After her family had brought her home from the hospital she developed pneumonia.

It's possible to develop diabetes in your teens or early twenties.

2. substitute (for) – to do someone else's job for a short period

Mark will substitute for me tomorrow.

3. prior – before a particular event

The phone company is required to give you prior notice before disconnecting your service.

All the arrangements should be completed prior to your departure.

4. capable of – able to do sth.

Rebecca was, without question, the most capable technician on the team.

The company isn't capable of handling an order that large.

5. brown – noser – a person who behaves in an overly friendly way

He tried to brown-nose the French teacher by staying after school and helping her clean the room.

6. rural – relating to the countryside

There continues to be a shortage of jobs for young people in many rural areas.

7. pool – a group of people that are available to work

We prefer to recruit from the graduate pool.

8. torment – to make smb. suffer severe physical or mental pain often deliberately

She was tormented by her memories.

The bigger kids keep tormenting him

9. outsized/outsize/oversize – bigger than usual or too big

Oversize, baggy shorts are still popular.

10. tint – color with a certain shade

The paper had a yellowish tint.

11. savor – to enjoy an experience, activity

Bill savored the view as he cruised along the coastline.

12. imminent – likely or certain to happen very soon

Many species of animals are in imminent danger of extinction.

Baggio's imminent departure is another blow for a team.

13. weird – strange, unusual sometimes in a way that upsets you

I had a weird dream last night.

14. prominent – easily seen, sticking out / well-known and respected

Daguerre was a prominent Mexico City lawyer.

She is likely to play a prominent part in the presidential elections.

15. descend – to move from a higher level to a lower one

Our plane started to descend.

16. nudge – to give a little push to smb. esp. with your elbow

Sheila nudged me in the ribs and pointed at Paul.

17. forecast – a statement of what is likely to happen in the future

The forecast is heavy rain for tomorrow.

18. allegiance – strong loyalty to a person, group, idea or country

Opposition leaders have proclaimed their allegiance to the new government.

19. pledge – to officially promise to give help, support or money to a group or a person

He pledged to his new country.

Many rock stars have pledged to support the campaign to save the rainforests.

The coup leaders have ignored their pledges to hold democratic elections.

Pledge of Allegiance – a short speech that US citizens recite in which they formally promise to be loyal to their country. Children say this every morning in most US schools.

20. premises – the building and land that a business or organization uses

The charity is hoping to move to new premises next year.

21. complete (with) – including smth. as extra part or feature.

The furniture comes complete with tools and instructions for assembly.

22. assign a task/job/duty etc. – to select and give responsibility

Madison was assigned to investigate a balloon accident

23. outline – to describe smth in a general way without any details

The president outlined his peace plans for the Middle East.

He outlined his views to me.

24. top/bottom/upper left/right-hand corner – on the right/left side of smth.

The graph in the bottom right-hand corner of the page.

25. clutch – to hold smth or smb. tightly, esp. if you do not want to lose smth.

Joanne clutched her mother's hand.

26. upside down – with the top at the bottom and the bottom at the top

To get the plant out of the pot, turn it upside down and give it a gentle knock.

The truck left the road and turned upside down

to make a place untidy when you are looking for smth.

The burglars have turned our house upside down.

to cause a lot of change and confusion in someone's life

The story is about a young girl whose life was turned upside down.

27. odor – smell esp. a bad one

Use our new freshener to get rid of unpleasant household odors.

PRACTICE

1. Write the word closest in meaning to the following groups of words.

1. duty, obligation, loyalty, faithfulness _____
2. torture, hector, bully, annoy, irritate _____
3. before, previous, former, earlier _____
4. near, looming, approaching, impending _____
5. strange, odd, queer, bizarre, mysterious _____
6. upcountry, agricultural, pastoral, rustic _____
7. fall, drop, plunge, plummet, sink, decline _____
8. delineate, define, lay out, draft, sketch out _____
9. promise, proclaim, swear, vow, guarantee _____
10. smell, fragrance, flavor, aroma, scent _____

2. Choose the word that best completes each sentence.

1. They tell me the most _____ stories about him.
A. rustic B. weird C. previous D. rural
2. People who live in _____ areas often depend on transportation.
A. downtown B. prominent C. rural D. near
3. The president has _____ that putting the economy right will be his top priority.
A. pledged B. descended C. plummeted D. hectored
4. Neighbors had noticed a foul _____ coming from the apartment.
A. draft B. outline C. duty D. odor
5. We _____ into the cave by a rope ladder.
A. descended B. outlined C. proclaimed D. dropped
6. The manager gave each member of staff a letter _____ their responsibilities.

- A. plunging B. substituting C. outlining D. tormenting
7. With the prospect of _____ bankruptcy life is getting tough for small businesses.
- A. bizarre B. rustic C. former D. imminent
8. Most applicants had no _____ experience of working with children.
- A. prior B. prominent C. looming D. queer
9. To become a citizen you must swear _____ to the United States.
- A. promise B. allegiance C. fragrance D. pledge
10. The cows were _____ by flies.
- A. bullied B. savored C. declined D. tormented

3. Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

odor	rural	imminent	pledge	descend
outline	prior	torment	weird	allegiance

1. War was _____.
2. They have a rather _____ relationship.
3. We have received _____ of help from various organizations.
4. If the number of tourists continues to expand, they will pose a considerable threat to traditional _____ countryside.
5. We now need to make a detailed analysis of a number of problems that were _____ in the company's annual report.
6. Some _____ experience with the software is needed.
7. If any food you buy seems moldy, discolored, or has an offensive _____, return it immediately.
8. If you want to _____, simply push the controls forward.
9. I pledge _____ to the flag of the United States and to the Republic for which it stands, one nation under the god, indivisible, with liberty and justice for all.
10. After three days of _____ she went to a dentist.

4. Choose the word closest in meaning to a boldfaced word.

- | | | | | |
|----------------------|-----------------|--------------|-----------------|--------------|
| 1. descend | A. drop | B. ascend | C. outline | D. define |
| 2. prior | A. bizarre | B. before | C. queer | D. rustic |
| 3. allegiance | A. substitution | B. fragrance | C. plunge | D. loyalty |
| 4. torment | A. bully | B. savor | C. nudge | D. swear |
| 5. odor | A. duty | B. plunge | C. smell | D. tint |
| 6. weird | A. rustic | B. queer | C. previous | D. looming |
| 7. pledge | A. display | B. delineate | C. promise | D. irritate |
| 8. outline | A. proclaim | B. define | C. annoy | D. plummet |
| 9. rural | A. odd | B. former | C. agricultural | D. queer |
| 10. imminent | A. approaching | B. sinking | C. annoying | D. torturing |

Part 2

1. sloppy Joe – a type of a sandwich made with ground beef and cooked in tomato sauce

sloppy – not done carefully

Ben has a very sloppy handwriting.

The report condemned inadequate supervision and the sloppy approach to safety measures.

sloppy clothes – loose-fitting and not looking neat

2. lounge – a room that is used as a place to relax

There's no dining room or lounge, but guests can have a self-service breakfast for £2.50.

3. principal – the head of a school, college or university

The principal of the business has an office in New York.

4. brand of humor/religion/ hilarity – a particular type of humor, etc.

5. hilarity – laughter or a feeling of fun

Gloria's costume caused a good deal of hilarity.

6. ditto –(machine) – a copy of a letter, form, etc. made on an old-fashioned machine

7. stuff – to fill a chicken, pepper etc with a mixture of bread or rice, onion etc.

Could you help me stuff these peppers?

8. raw – not cooked/in a natural state and not treated

Cabbage can be eaten raw.

The cost of our raw materials has risen significantly.

9. schedule – to plan that smth. will happen at a particular time; plan ones future

We have a rehearsal scheduled for four o'clock.

10. recess – a break during the working day or year at law court, government, school

Congress will return in January from it's holiday recess.

One of the lawyers asked the judge for a recess.

11. slug – to strike hard with a fist

Jimmy slugged Paul in the stomach and pushed him to the ground.

12. trudge – to walk along wearily

I had to trudge up four flights of stairs to my hotel room.

13. mode – a particular way or style of behaving, living or doing something

They have a relaxed mode of life that suits them well.

a particular way in which a machine or piece of equipment can operate

Set the monitor to 256 color mode.

14. be about – to be going to do smth or to happen.

I was about to get undressed when there was a knock on the door

We arrived just as the ceremony was about to begin.

15. cover – to include or deal with a particular subject or group of things

The course covers all aspects of business and law.

Most policies cover accidental damage to pipes.

16. scrolls – roll of paper used as an official document esp. in past times

On the walls were scrolls with oriental writing on them.

17. repository – a place where things are stored in large quantities

a furniture repository/a repository for/of nuclear waste.

18. power (of) – a natural or special ability to do something

She claims to have psychic powers.

The greatest athletes are legendary for their powers of concentration.

19. feature – characteristic

Air bags are a standard feature in most new cars.

One of the distinguishing features of modern banking is its dependence on computers.

20. notable – important, interesting enough to be noticed, distinguished, eminent

Schools have seen a notable increase in applications for free lunch.

21. gryphon – an imaginary animal that has a lion’s body and an eagle’s wings and head

22. marble – type of hard rock used for making buildings, statues etc.

The columns were of white marble.

23. nail (inf) – to catch smb and prove that they are guilty of a crime or smth. bad

Police use radar to nail speeding drivers.

They finally nailed Capone for tax evasion

24. outrage – to make so. feel very angry or shocked

People were outraged at the idea that a convicted killer could be released so soon.

Church leaders expressed their shock and outrage at his racist remarks.

25. combine – to join or mix two or more things together

Modern and traditional teaching methods are combined at the school.

26. shovel – tool with a rounded blade and a long handle used for moving earth, stones etc.

He went into the nearest town and bought a proper shovel.

27. chores – everyday work to do around the house

You can go and play after you’ve done your chores.

28. fabulous (literary) – describing creatures, places in stories, that do not really exist

PRACTICE

1. Write the word closest in meaning to the following groups of words.

1. noteworthy, remarkable, outstanding, uncommon _____

2. way, type, style, approach, system, procedure _____

3. break, respite, adjournment, rest, suspension _____

4. shock, offend, infuriate, enrage, affront, madden _____

5. slapdash, slipshod, messy, careless, untidy _____

6. attribute, aspect, facet, property, quality, trait _____

7. unprocessed, fresh, natural, crude, unrefined _____

8. capability, capacity, potential, control, influence _____

9. assignment, task, errand, housework, duty _____

10. describe, involve, refer to, consider, incorporate _____

2. Choose the word that best completes each sentence.

1. Court will be in _____ for twenty minutes.
A. mode B. recess C. recession D. facet
2. His book on European history _____ the period from 1914 to 2001.
A. offended B. outraged C. covered D. adjourned
3. It was an _____ to take innocent civilians hostage.
A. outrage B. fragrance C. adjournment D. break
4. When I got old enough I started to have _____ around the house.
A. chores B. respites C. scrolls D. powers
5. The creation of UN was, perhaps, the most _____ achievement of the 20th century.
A. sloppy B. bizarre C. notable D. slapdash
6. An important _____ of Van Gogh's paintings is their bright colors.
A. power B. task C. type D. feature
7. Employers are now complaining about the _____ teaching of English in our schools.
A. natural B. sloppy C. remarkable D. fresh
8. In its _____ state, cocoa is very bitter.
A. rare B. careless C. raw D. messy
9. To get out of the 'auto' _____ on the camera, turn the knob to 'M'.
A. recess B. pledge C. mode D. respite
10. After the accident she lost the _____ of speech
A. aspect B. power C. property D. way

3. Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

recess	sloppy	modes	feature	raw
notable	outraged	power	covered	chore

1. The ambassador promised to do everything in his _____ to make sure the hostages were not harmed.

2. Peter told me that during the _____ he had seen a member of the jury talking to a reporter.
3. Such _____ work is completely unacceptable – you're at University now.
4. The treatment wasn't _____ by her healthcare insurance.
5. Striped tails are a common _____ of many animals.
6. Many people were _____ by the attack
7. Washing the kitchen floor was a daily _____ and it was the one I hated most.
8. In the late 20th century, we have more choices about _____ of living.
9. Japan depends on the outside world for virtually all of its _____ materials, including oil.
10. In 1920 American women won a _____ victory in their struggle for rights.

4. Choose the word closest in meaning to a boldfaced word.

- | | | | | |
|--------------------|----------------|----------------|--------------|----------------|
| 1. feature | A. attribute | B. task | C. errand | D. style |
| 2. raw | A. slipshod | B. common | C. crude | D. rare |
| 3. mode | A. aspect | B. task | C. break | D. way |
| 4. cover | A. shock | B. accept | C. describe | C. suspend |
| 5. recess | A. duty | B. break | C. procedure | D. type |
| 6. outrage | A. involve | B. incorporate | C. adjourn | D. shock |
| 7. power | A. facet | B. quality | C. capacity | D. approach |
| 8. sloppy | A. afresh | B. messy | C. natural | D. unprocessed |
| 9. chore | A. assignment | B. adjournment | C. system | D. trait |
| 10. notable | A. outstanding | B. untidy | C. slapdash | D. unrefined |

Part 3

1. alter – to change

My hometown had hardly altered since when I was last there.

2. tight – fitting a part of your body very closely

These shoes hurt. They are too tight.

very firmly or closely

Hold tight and don't let go of my hand.

3. straight – happening one after the other in a series

It's rained for eight days straight.

not bent or curved

The crash occurred on a straight section of the highway.

She has straight black hair.

Go straight for about two blocks until you come to the traffic lights

immediately or without delay

Let's get straight down to business.

You should have gone straight to the police.

4. be cursed with/by smth – to be affected by smth. doomed for bad ending

Collins' novel is about a cursed jewel stolen from an idol's eye.

5. fate – the things that will happen to someone or something, especially bad events

These rulings will affect the fate of more than 6,000 refugees.

6. unquenchable – impossible to extinguish (fire), to get rid of or satisfy

He has an unquenchable enthusiasm for hunting, and especially for hawking.

7. carve – to make objects, patterns by cutting (out of solid wood or stone)

These statues were probably carved during the reign of William III.

They carved their initials on the desk.

8. icky – repulsive, distasteful

What is this icky black stuff on the tree?

9. smear – to make dirty

She had been crying because her make up had smeared.

10. stick – difficult to move

This door keeps sticking.

The wheels stuck fast in the mud.

11. mute – unable to speak, silent, tone down sound

He stood mute before the judge.

12. lozenge – a small flat candy, especially one that contains medicine

a cough lozenge

13. permanent – continuing to exist for a long time or for all the time in the future

He gave up a permanent job in order to freelance.

Most police departments keep a permanent record of all violent crimes committed in their area.

14. pound – to crush, beat rhythmically, hit repeatedly with force

The speaker pounded his fists on the table.

Waves were pounding at the rocks.

15. Tarot pack – a set of 78 cards with pictures on them used for telling the future

16. dreary – dull, not interesting not cheerful

The room is so dreary. You should brighten it up a little.

17. major – very large or important, when compared to other things or people

There are two major political parties in the US.

The government's major concern is with preventing road accidents.

18. undergo – to have a change, bad experience, be subjected to

The computer industry has undergone some major changes over the past 15 years.

In March he underwent surgery for suspected appendicitis.

19. desolation – loneliness, emptiness, remoteness

It was difficult to describe the emptiness, the desolation of the area.

20. load – a problem or worry that is difficult to deal with

Coping with ill health was a heavy load to bear.

Knowing he was safe was a load off my mind

21. rusty/rusted – describes a metal object damaged by the red substance

A rusty old car had been abandoned at the side of the road.

describes a skill that has not been used recently

We haven't played in a long time, we might be a little rusty.

22. ditch – a long narrow open hole that is dug in the ground for water to flow through

I fell asleep on the way home and drove my car into a ditch.

23. swamp – land that is always very wet or covered with a layer of water

Witnesses in a nearby aircraft said the plane flew directly into the swamp.

24. internal – within a particular country, company, organization/inside smth.

The Nation's internal problems have drawn public attention from the crisis abroad

After the accident, NASA conducted an internal investigation.

PRACTICE

1. Write the word closest in meaning to the following groups of words.

1. main, leading, great, important, significant _____
2. stain, spot, mar, sully, tarnish, blemish _____
3. inner, inside, innate, inherent, interior _____
4. change, modify, amend, adjust, convert _____
5. doomed, ill-fated, damned, star-crossed _____
6. cut, engrave, incise, hew, shape, sculpture _____
7. constant, eternal, lasting, stable, perennial _____
8. decayed, out of practice, inexperienced _____
9. bear, endure, withstand, experience, go through _____
10. silent, speechless, unspoken, voiceless _____

2. Choose the word that best completes each item.

1. Heavy traffic is a _____ problem in most cities.
A. major B. mute C. inner D. doomed
2. The table cloth was _____ with jam, crayon and berry-juice.
A. damned B. engraved C. smeared D. carved
3. The bridge had _____ a series of modifications and will be re-opened in two weeks.
A. engraved B. undergone C. altered D. spotted
4. I found her very much _____.
A. cursed B. tarnished C. doomed D. altered
5. The _____ affairs of other nations should not be of concern to us.
A. internal B. eternal C. permanent D. unspoken
6. Billy continued to stand there, _____ and defiant.
A. innate B. mute C. main D. cursed
7. In the shed were some damp newspapers, a tin hat and some _____ tools.
A. inherent B. stable C. leading D. rusty

8. Michelangelo _____ this figure from a single block of marble.

- A. endured B. blemished C. converted D. carved

9. The museum has been _____ by financial problems since it opened.

- A. cursed B. modified C. rusted D. smeared

10. Mr. Lo has applied for _____ residence in the U.S.

- A. internal B. significant C. permanent D. interior

3. Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

smear	major	internal	cursed	undergo
altered	carved	rusty	mute	permanent

1. Her face hadn't much _____ over the years.
2. The Union leader faced strong _____ pressure from members to resign.
3. This is a cynical attempt to _____ a political rival.
4. The kid stared at me in a state of _____ fear.
5. I haven't been to Senegal for years, so my French is a little _____.
6. Someone had _____ their initials on the tree.
7. All the world's _____ sporting events can be seen on HHS TV.
8. The area is _____ with transportation problems.
9. The car accident has caused _____ damage to her eyesight.
10. She has to _____ tests on Monday.

4. Choose the word closest in meaning to a boldfaced word.

1. **smear** A. incise B. stain C. bear D. amend
2. **cursed** A. doomed B. tarnished C. endured D. engraved
3. **permanent** A. inherent B. important C. constant D. great
4. **alter** A. modify B. mar C. sully D. bear
5. **rusty** A. innate B. decayed C. stable D. ill-fated
6. **carve** A. convert B. cut C. spot D. withstand

7. major	A. inner	B. stable	C. lasting	D. main
8. undergo	A. experience	B. incise	C. tarnish	D. hew
9. internal	A. significant	B. speechless	C. inside	D. leading
10. mute	A. interior	B. perennial	C. eternal	D. silent

B. PHRASAL VERBS

Part 1

1. come down with – to catch or show signs of (an illness)

He came down with measles on his fifth birthday.

2. do up – to arrange your hair

Her shiny dark hair was done up in a pony tail

3. launch into – to start smth as an explanation /project

He immediately launched into detailed account of his trip.

4. refer to so/smth – to mention/ describe /speak about smth. or smb.

She referred to the subject several times during her speech.

Even as a boy he referred to his father as Steve.

The term “groupware” refers to software designed to be used by several computers at once.

5. go into – to explain, describe or talk about smth. in detail

I don't want to go into the matter now.

to examine smth. thoroughly

During this course we'll go into the main causes of the French Revolution.

6. care for/about – to be interested or concerned

She doesn't care for anybody except herself.

to like someone or something *Do you think she still cares for him even though he married someone else?*

7. move on – to proceed to the next task

Let's move on to the next exercise.

8. go through – to look at smth. carefully to check that it is correct

He went through his notes again before the test.

9. hand in/turn in – to give smth. to smb. so that they can check, or look after

When you leave the hotel, please hand in your key at the desk

She turned in a really first-rate essay on George Orwell.

10. wear away – to remove or disappear through use or time (wood, stone, metal, etc.)

The inscription on the coin had worn away.

The leather is starting to wear away at the seams.

PRACTICE

1. MATCH PHRASAL VERBS WITH THEIR DEFINITIONS.

- | | |
|-------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. launch into | a. to become ill |
| 2. refer to | b. to like, be concerned |
| 3. come down with | c. to arrange one's hair |
| 4. wear away | d. to mention smth. |
| 5. move on | e. to look at smth carefully |
| 6. care for | f. to talk about smth. in detail |
| 7. hand in | g. to start sth. as an explanation |
| 8. do up | h. to give smth. to smb. to check |
| 9. go into | i. to go further |
| 10. go through. | j. to become no longer visible |

2. Replace the underlined words with the appropriate phrasal verbs.

1. Miss Winters thought I was becoming ill with something and told me to go home.
2. For the birthday party, she arranged her hair with a ribbon.
3. He started a verbal attack on her handling of the finances.
4. You must have your kit checked before you leave the army.
5. The blue line on the graph describes sales.
6. Shall we looked at the details of the plan again?
7. When you finish, go further to the next exercise.

8. It is almost impossible to read the inscription on the monument as most of the letters have disappeared.
9. He explained in detail a long speech about European politics.
10. Money is the thing she is interested most.

3. COMPLETE THE SENTENCES WITH THE PHRASAL VERBS.

1. I feel like I'm _____ a cold.
2. She _____ her term paper _____ late.
3. Powell _____ a ten-minute summary of the plan.
4. Then the conversation _____ to happier topics.
5. For the birthday party, she _____ her hair _____ with a ribbon.
6. Clare wouldn't _____ details about her divorce.
7. Let's _____ the arrangements of my trip again
8. I don't _____ that color very much.
9. The term 'adolescent _____ young people between the ages of 12 and 17.
10. The motion of the waves had _____ a lot of the rocks _____.

Parts 2 – 3

1. mess around/about – to behave or touch smth. in a careless or foolish way

Stop messing about and come and help.

He spent his vacation messing around on the farm.

2. think about /off – to consider smth./intend or plan to do smth.

It is certainly an offer worth thinking about.

I had never thought of becoming an actor.

3. take off (inf.) – to leave somewhere suddenly, especially without telling anyone

Ken took off about an hour ago.

4. go into – to enter a particular profession or business

He wants to go into law when he gets out of school.

5. tell on – to give information, esp. about bad behavior, to someone in authority

If you don't stop hitting, I'm going to tell on you.

PRACTICE

1. MATCH PHRASAL VERBS WITH THEIR DEFINITIONS.

- | | |
|----------------|---|
| 1. tell on | a. to behave silly |
| 2. go into | b. to start working in a particular field |
| 3. take off | c. to consider |
| 4. think about | d. to give information |
| 5. mess around | e. to leave |

2. Replace the underlined words with the appropriate phrasal verbs.

1. After Alice graduated, she entered law.
2. I was afraid my little sister would gave information about me.
3. We are considering buying a new car before prices go up.
4. As soon as she saw George arrive she just left.
5. We were just behaving silly when Greg broke the lamp.

3. COMPLETE THE SENTENCES WITH THE PHRASAL VERBS.

1. If you don't give back my pencil, I'm going to _____ you.
2. I may quit selling and _____ management.
3. Stop _____ and get ready for school.
4. When he saw me coming he _____ in the opposite direction.
5. He is _____ starting his own business.

C. IDIOMS

- 1. get/make a mileage out of sth.** – to take/get and advantage, get a lot of use

He has got a lot of mileage out of his experience in China.

They tried to make a political mileage out of a tragedy.

- 2. Time flies** – time passes very quickly

Goodness, it's six o'clock. Time flies. We've have been chatting all afternoon.

- 3. How come** – Why? How does/did it happen that

How come you never told me about George before?

4. pass the time – to fill up the time

I never know how to pass the time when I'm on vacation.

5. Guess what – used to show that you are going to say smth. surprising

Guess what! Peter has passed his driving test.

6. make smb./smth **famous/safe** – to cause smth to happen

Engineers have been working throughout the night to make the bridge safe.

7. take responsibility – to have to make decisions about smth.

Whatever that awful child has done I promise to take full responsibility.

I want you to take full responsibility for all the arrangements.

1. Complete the sentences with the idioms in the box.

got a lot of mileage	time fly	took responsibility
guess what	how come	to pass the time

1. _____ you never listen to anything I say?
2. _____ I started to do a crossword puzzle.
3. My husband _____ full _____ for organizing the trip.
4. Bob always _____ out of one joke.
5. I didn't really think it was so late when the party ended. Doesn't _____?
6. _____! He has asked me out.

2. Complete the sentences with the verbs *make* and *do*.

1. _____ a list of all the things you need.
2. Anyone can _____ a mistake.
3. Sometimes Deborah had to shout at Scott to get him to _____ his extra chores.
4. Archie doesn't even _____ an effort to help out around the house.
5. It was this movie which _____ him a star.
6. Students are under considerable pressure to _____ well.
7. The photo _____ her look much older than she really is.
8. She gave us 20 mathematical problems to _____ .
9. His attitude _____ him very unpopular with colleagues.

D. WORD STUDY

CHARACTERISTIC ▪ QUALITY ▪ PROPERTY ▪ FEATURE ▪ TRAIT

1. characteristic – one part of character of smb. or smth.

If we compare the main characteristics of these two languages, we can recognize important differences.

All great leaders share certain characteristics which must be seen as the key to their success.

The main characteristics of capitalism are private ownership of capital and freedom of enterprise.

2. quality – an important part of the character of smth (esp. a good one)

ability that is a part of someone's character

Among his other endearing qualities, Ralph was an exceedingly patient man.

There are certain qualities in Orwell prose that I certainly admire.

3. property - a characteristic of a particular substance or chemical

The properties of the soil influence the growth of the plants.

All sound has three properties: pitch, volume, and duration.

4. feature – a characteristic of smth., a part of smb's face, such as their eyes, nose

Federalism remains a very important feature of American politics.

He had a small face with delicate features.

One of the features of auto-immune diseases is that they are often genetically similar.

The hotel's most attractive feature is its magnificent view of Mount Hood.

5. trait (formal) – a particular quality in someone's character

There was a trait in his personality that encouraged people to trust him.

The mutation has no functional significance and controls no traits, researchers say.

Complete the sentences with the appropriate word.

1. People are becoming more aware of garlic's medicinal _____.
2. Patriotism was a prominent _____ in Bush's election campaign.
3. Does Bryce have any bad _____?
4. One of the _____ of this species is the dark blue markings on its back.
5. He shows strong leadership _____.
6. We test the chemical and biological _____ of the samples.
7. The UK shares many _____ with other European countries.

8. Her eyes are her best_____.
9. It's a human _____ to joke about subjects that make us uncomfortable.
- 10.Despite its many _____, the school simply isn't getting results.
- 11.The two diseases have a number of _____ in common.
- 12.The conducting _____ of solids vary widely
- 13.Information on employment is a central _____of this training course.
- 14.Pride seems to be one of our family _____.
- 15.This wine possesses a unique _____.

TEACHER ▪ TUTOR ▪ EDUCATOR ▪ LECTURER ▪
PROFESSOR INSTRUCTOR ▪ COACH ▪ TRAINER ▪
ACADEMIC ▪ FACULTY

1. teacher – someone who's job is to teach especially at school

Some high-school teachers of Spanish or French do not speak the language as well as they should.

2. tutor – someone who gives private lessons

(Br.) a university teacher who's responsible for directing the studies of a group of students and giving them advice

As well as lecturing, each member of staff acts as personal tutor to two or three students.

3. educator (Am.) – someone who teaches in a school, college, or university

Professor Taylor is generally recognized as one of the state's most respected educators.

4. lecturer (Br.) – someone who teaches at a university or college

John Adams is a lecturer in astrophysics at University College.

5. professor – (B r.) a very high ranking university teacher

(Am.) any university teacher who has a second degree

Professor Paterson will give the keynote address.

She's a professor of history at Oxford University.

6. coach – someone who trains a person or a team in a sport

Many basketball coaches took up coaching after successful playing careers.

7. trainer – someone who trains people for sport or for work

The company has hired a trainer to teach their workers selling and marketing skills.

She's the trainer of the volleyball team.

8. academic – someone who works, studies, and teaches in a university and has great knowledge about a particular subject

Academics can usually get time off teaching to do their own research.

9. faculty (Am.) – all the teachers in a college or university

Norman White has been on the faculty at ULCA for over thirty years.

10. instructor – someone who teaches a practical skill such as driving, horse-riding, etc.

He is a driving instructor at a transport school in Frankfurt.

(Am.) someone who teaches at a college or university and who has a rank below assistant professor

He is an instructor in French at Harvard University.

Complete the sentences with the appropriate word.

1. Most _____ agree that intimidating kids is not the best way to encourage them to learn.
2. He is a very successful _____. His team has won five national championships.
3. She was working full - time now as an aerobics _____.
4. The dining room is only for members of the _____, staff and administration.
5. I learned a lot from Mr. Harrald - he was a really good _____.
6. Dr. Taylor is a senior _____ at Sheffield University.
7. She had been too ill to attend school so she studied at home with a private _____.
8. She is a _____ at the local elementary school.
9. My _____ said that I was doing well. But my final grade was awful.
10. The meeting was chaired by a leading Japanese _____.
11. Many companies now pay outside _____ to come in and teach management skills to their staff.
12. A drop in enrollment will affect students, _____, and administrators.

13. In 1998 he was appointed _____ of physics at the Royal College of Science, London.

14. I've got an appointment with my _____.

15. We got a professional football _____ to come and help us train the team.

▪ G O ▪

1. go about – to do smth. or begin working at smth.

What's the best way to go about it?

We think it's the wrong way to go about solving a very serious problem.

2. go ahead – to begin or continue with something

Work on the new building will go ahead in May.

The newspaper decided to go ahead and publish the story.

to encourage smb. to do smth.

Go ahead and have another piece of cake – there's plenty left.

3. go into – to enter a particular profession or business

Janet says she'd like to go into teaching after she finishes college.

to explain, describe, or talk about something in detail

That's a good question, but I don't want to go into it now.

to examine sth. carefully

During this course we'll go into the main causes of the French Revolution.

4. go off – to explode

Fireworks went off all over the city last night.

There was a bomb in the building but it didn't go off.

to make a loud noise

When our microwave oven has finished cooking, a buzzer will go off.

if a machine goes off, it stops working

All the lights in the building suddenly went off.

5. go on – to continue without stopping or after a short pause

Syn. move on

The delegates decided to go on with their meeting instead of breaking off for lunch.

After a short break for coffee they went on working until 3 o'clock.

to do something after you have finished doing something else

When you finish the first section of the test, go on to the next.

After talking about the tax increases, he went on to say that some people would lose their jobs.

to take place or happen

The festival's been going on for about 15 years.

I wonder what's going on next door – they are making a lot of noise.

to pass (time)

As time went on I began to like him more.

6. go over – to examine or check smth. thoroughly

I'd like to go over last month's accounts with you.

Could you go over this report and correct any mistakes?

to search something or a place very carefully

Investigators have gone over every square inch of the area looking for clues.

to review or explain smth.

Don't worry if you don't understand anything. – I'll go over the main points again at the end.

The teacher had to go over the whole lesson again because nobody had been listening.

7. go through – to examine smth. very carefully

Syn. go over

Give me a day or two to go through this contract, and then I'll call you with advice.

to suffer or experience smth bad

How does she keep smiling after what she has been through?

It takes four years to go through college.

to pass a law

The law finally went through with a lot of effort from the Democrats.

to approve officially

I sent the board of directors a proposal. I hope it goes through.

to practice something, for example a performance

Let's go through the song one more time.

to look at or for something carefully

I went through all of our closets and I still can't find my tennis racket.

I always start the day by going through the mail.

Complete the sentences with the appropriate particles.

1. She didn't really understand what was going _____.
2. How should I go _____ finding a job?
3. I overslept because my alarm clock didn't go _____.
4. As time went _____ she became more and more successful.
5. Go _____ your work before you hand it in.
6. The company is refusing to go _____ detail about its offer.
7. Go _____ with the project since you have already started it.
8. She wants to go _____ politics.
9. It was terrible. I don't know how I went _____ it.
10. The discussion went _____ for another four hours before agreement was reached.
11. Will you please go _____ this form? I don't understand it.
12. Let's go _____ the argument again.
13. The bomb went _____ in a crowded street.
14. We found out that our car loan has gone _____.
15. She went _____ the company's accounts, looking for evidence of fraud.
16. We need to go _____ the question of costs.
17. The heating goes _____ at night.
18. Let's go _____ to the next item on the agenda.
19. Everyone expects this bill to go _____ Congress quickly.
20. Do you mind if I open the window?' 'No, go _____.'

E. REVISION

VOCABULARY

1. Choose the word that best completes each sentence.

1. It was only during the _____ that the delegates got a chance to talk.
A. outrage B. recess C. descent D. repository
2. Her parents lived in a big house on the _____ of Tokyo.

- A. premises B. pledges C. outskirts D. chores
3. His prospects of finding another job are _____
- A. notable B. bleak C. prior D. imminent
4. My hometown had hardly _____, since when I was last there.
- A. cursed B. outlined C. carved D. altered
5. He was wearing purple and white striped trainers that looked _____ on such an old man.
- A. tight B. weird C. sloppy D. permanent
6. Many parents were _____ by the teacher's strike last year.
- A. tormented B. outraged C. outspoken D. assigned
7. His face was _____ with mud and sweat.
- A. savored B. tormented C. smeared D. tinted
8. During my _____ the parachute became tangled.
- A. power B. load C. descent D. pledge
9. The conference was attended by both government officials and _____ academics.
- A. capable B. hilarious C. outrageous D. prominent
10. The document _____ our company's recycling policy.
- A. develops B. forecasts C. outlines D. alters
11. The latest model has a lot of new safety _____.
- A. features B. qualities C. chores D. scrolls
12. It will be very sad if Kinnock _____ from politics altogether.
- A. pledges B. withdraws C. assigns D. undergoes
13. Some of the buildings were in a state of _____ collapse.
- A. imminent B. prominent C. internal D. dreary
14. He has _____ to fight for a fairer system.
- A. covered B. developed C. pledged D. savored
15. In the air there was the unmistakable _____ of barbecue smoke.
- A. fate B. mode C. swamp D. odor
16. The room is so _____. You should brighten it up a little

- A. rusty B. dreary C. mute D. tight
17. Most British people have little understanding of the _____ politics of Northern Ireland.
- A. internal B. imminent C. straight D. permanent
18. If Marsh is unfit for the start of the tour, his likely _____ will be Robinson.
- A. graduate B. substitute C. high-flyer D. co-worker
19. I saw them _____ at each other as if they knew something I didn't.
- A. glimpse B. stare C. glance D. peer
20. Our views on the issue _____ closely with those of the British Government.
- A. undergo B. cover C. differ D. coincide
21. Bank and businesses _____ were damaged by yesterday's bombing.
- A. premise B. premises C. ditches D. pledges
22. The country has _____ massive changes recently.
- A. undergone B. tormented C. altered D. outlined
23. You can't climb a mountain without _____ equipment.
- A. combined B. notable D. proper D. sloppy
24. The course _____ all aspects of business and law.
- A. descends B. assigns C. substitutes D. covers
25. Most applicants had no _____ experience of working with children.
- A. raw B. rusty C. fabulous D. prior
26. The blindness that the disease causes will be _____.
- A. permanent B. major C. principal D. mute

2. Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

pledges	outline	bleak	outrage	descent
outskirts	odors	imminent	recess	features
withdrew	prominent	altered	smear	weird

1. With the election _____ Churchill returned to London.
2. What a _____ machine! It looks like something out of Star Trek.
3. The Government has fulfilled at least 50% of its election _____.
4. The study shows how the social and economic position of women has _____ since 1945.
5. The _____ from the mountain to the valley takes two hours.
6. Use our new air freshener to get rid of unpleasant household _____.
7. When you reach the _____ of Berlin, give me a call and I'll direct you from there.
8. The future looked _____ for the Democratic Party.
9. I _____ from the transaction before the contracts were exchanged.
10. In his speech the Prime Minister will _____ his new proposals.
11. At four o'clock the judge called a _____ and the jury was led out of the courtroom.
12. The film tries to _____ people in order to raise awareness of the terrible situation.
13. Politicians who are _____ in public life may be at risk from terrorism.
14. Each room has its own distinctive _____.
15. The glass was so _____ that I could hardly see my reflection in it.

3. Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

internal	proper	covered	mode	substituted
fake	allegiance	amount	sloppy	quality
permanent	raw	premises	prior	rusty

1. Their way of life is British and their _____ is to the Queen.
2. Owing to the high insurance cost the original painting has been ___ with a copy.
3. The entire investigation was conducted in an unsystematic and _____ manner.
4. In November the director wrote a (n) _____ memorandum suggesting that the company should close down three of its factories.
5. While on the _____, all visitors must carry some form of identification.
6. We discovered that the antique vase was not genuine. It had in fact been _____.

7. Are there any areas you feel are not _____ adequately in the book?
8. You do not need any _____ knowledge of the subject.
9. Only five of the firm's employees are _____.
10. One _____ of oil is that it floats on water.
11. Mayonnaise is traditionally made with _____ eggs.
12. Although she used to be a secretary her typing is a bit _____.
13. To put the VCR in record _____ you press record and play simultaneously.
14. Higher math skills are not given _____ attention in schools.
15. A certain _____ of stress can be good.

4. Choose the word closest in meaning to a boldfaced word.

- | | | | | |
|----------------------|----------------|---------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. torment | A. hector | B. plummet | C. shape | D. blemish |
| 2. cover | A. withstand | B. refer to | C. adjust | D. engrave |
| 3. imminent | A. eminent | B. mysterious | C. perennial | D. looming |
| 4. weird | A. bizarre | B. doomed | C. inherent | D. messy |
| 5. prior | A. near | B. previous | C. main | D. interior |
| 6. allegiance | A. capacity | B. assignment | C. obligation | D. suspension |
| 7. odor | A. scent | B. task | C. attribute | D. trait |
| 8. pledge | A. affront | B. consider | C. amend | D. proclaim |
| 9. rural | A. rustic | B. former | C. uncommon | D. natural |
| 10. recess | A. approach | B. aspect | C. control | D. respite |
| 11. notable | A. slipshod | B. decayed | C. prominent | D. star-crossed |
| 12. outrage | A. maltreat | B. modify | C. star-crossed | D. endure |
| 13. carve | A. incise | B. stain | C. bear | D. sully |
| 14. descend | A. change | B. convert | C. involve | D. plunge |
| 15. sloppy | A. odd | B. unrefined | C. slapdash | D. stable |
| 16. alter | A. experience | B. amend | C. spot | D. describe |
| 17. outline | A. incorporate | B. proclaim | C. hew | D. delineate |
| 18. smear | A. tarnish | B. offend | C. define | D. decline |

19. **feature** A. facet B. potential C. errand D. procedure
20. **internal** A. outstanding B. earlier C. innate D. queer

5. Choose the word opposite in meaning to a boldfaced word.

1. **allegiance** A. approach B. treachery C. obligation C. fragrance
2. **descend** A. plummet B. ascend C. incise D. define
3. **alter** A. preserve B. draft C. amend D. swear
4. **torment** A. torture B. please C. delineate D. proclaim
5. **notable** A. prominent B. looming C. abominable D. pastoral
6. **imminent** A. slapdash B. impending C. delayed D. inside
7. **weird** A. natural B. unrefined C. bizarre D. rustic
8. **dreary** A. bleak B. inherent C. stable D. cheerful
9. **sloppy** A. slipshod B. silent C. fastidious D. damned
10. **permanent** A. significant B. perennial C. inherent D. eternal

PHRASAL VERBS

6. Complete the sentences with the appropriate phrasal verbs.

1. He _____ his essay three days late.
2. Nelson _____ a blistering criticism of greedy lawyers
3. How would you _____ reorganizing the kitchen?
4. Constant rubbing is _____ the features on the statue face.
5. The soldiers were injured when the bomb _____ near them.
6. We'll start class by _____ your homework
7. She really didn't understand what was _____.
8. Stop _____ with those tools before somebody gets hurt.
9. There was a power outage and all the lights _____.
10. We _____ the speech word by word.
11. If you want to leave, _____ right _____.
12. If you don't know what book to get, _____ the list on page 3.

IDIOMS

7. Complete the sentences with the appropriate idioms.

1. I _____ a lot of _____ my TV before it broke down.
2. Is Richard eight already? Doesn't _____?
3. _____! I won a trip to the Caribbean.
4. _____ there was no petrol in the tank?
5. What do you do to _____?
6. He was a team leader _____ for marketing.

I I. GRAMMAR FOCUS

1. Write the negative prefixes *in-*, *un*

_____ wrap _____ capable _____ serious
_____ suitable _____ employed _____ earthly
_____ complete _____ frequent _____ correct

2. Complete the sentences with the words from Exercise 1

1. He was an _____ visitor to the place.
2. The city's road system is _____ of handling the current volume traffic.
3. It is an _____ problem. We should be able to fix it without too much trouble.
4. He _____ a present as soon as he got it.
5. Scientific knowledge in this area is still _____.
6. How can he explain that when 71,000 people in the city of Liverpool alone are currently _____?
7. They heard an _____ scream coming from somewhere at the back of the cave.
8. The figure for export sales _____; it should be \$6000, not \$6.
9. The first person we interviewed was _____ for the job.

3. Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions.

1. Miss Brown comes every day to give me lessons _____ French.

2. He replaced the fuse and switched on the motor. _____everybody's relief it worked.
3. They're planning to talk to Joe prior _____ the meeting.
4. I want you to take responsibility _____all the arrangements.
5. At a height of 25,000 feet, the lack_____oxygen causes dizziness and headaches.
6. _____my view, the study of psychology is outside the range of natural sciences.
7. We live three miles to the west _____the park.
8. The fleet is _____the way to Coral Sea.
9. They are going to test us_____our mathematical skills.
10. _____ some reason or other, he couldn't come today.
11. I made an appointment _____ October 18th.

4. Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions.

1. They rebuild the stand substituting strong metal support_____the old wooden ones.
2. Access to the files is limited _____ management.
3. Jim was standing outside the supermarket, waiting _____ a bus.
4. The amount I earn depends _____the kind of work I am doing.
5. The doctor was new_____town so I offered to show him around.
6. If you speak French every day you should soon be good _____ it.
7. The activity holidays on offer are really best suited _____ groups.
8. These computerized weapons are capable _____ hitting almost any target.
9. If you don't know what book to get, refer _____ the list on page 3.
10. Tom insists _____ installing a security system.
11. The town is notable _____ its ancient harbor.
12. The book complete _____ cassette, costs \$35.
13. Patients should be more aware_____the combined effects of their medications.
14. He has spent the last two years working _____a book about childcare.

5. Complete the sentences with infinitives or gerunds.

1. She wrote him a letter to remind him _____ (do) his laundry at 2'clock.
2. Sandra was the last _____ (perform) at the dance recital.
3. It's too late _____ (do) anything about it.
4. The job involved _____ (work) with a software equipment.
5. It was very cold earlier today but it seems _____ (be) warm now.
6. He claims _____ (discover) a cure for common cold.
7. I look forward to _____ (see) the artwork at the museum's latest exhibition.
8. He is unwilling to admit _____ (be) jealous of his brother.
9. She is old enough _____ (decide) for herself.
10. I don't know how _____ (operate) this machine.
11. I refuse _____ (take) responsibility if anything goes wrong.
12. The new job means _____ (take) on more responsibility.
13. Are you free _____ (talk) for a couple of minutes?
14. What's the best way _____ (learn) a language?

6. Complete the sentences using the correct forms of *say or tell*.

1. Jim _____ me you had been offered a new job.
2. We will start by _____ the Pledge of Allegiance.
3. She _____ that Jim was arriving later that day.
4. It was hard to _____ the difference between two versions.
5. The two dials in the middle _____ you the airspeed and altitude.
6. Mr. Picker _____ to the press that he was selling his company.
7. Does the insurance policy _____ whether we are covered against storm damage?
8. The manager _____ John that he wanted to see him in his office immediately.
9. We stayed up _____ jokes until 2 a.m.
10. Does anyone else have anything to _____?
11. 'So, what are your plans now?' 'I'd rather not _____'.
12. Can you _____ me the way to the square?

7. Rewrite the sentences using the verbs in the box.

deny	remind	boast	accuse	promise
admit	volunteer	demand	threaten	complain
predict	announce	inform	wonder	want to know

1. "I haven't seen Steve since Saturday night,"

2. "I'm a superb cook,"

3. "I'll phone as soon as I have any news,"

4. "OK, it's true that I've told some lies,"

5. "If you don't leave immediately, I'll call the police,"

6. "The meal you served us was totally inedible,".

7. "Don't forget to go to the supermarket after work,"

8. "Did she tell you the truth?"

9. "If you can't find anyone, I'll drive to the airport,"

10. "I must know your decision soon,"

11. "John, you didn't report the accident to the police,"

12. "We will not get any rain tonight,"

13. "The concert in the park will begin at 8:00,"

14. "You will be called for the interview,"

15. "Where have you been?"

8. Rewrite the sentences in Reported speech using the verb *advise*.

1. "I think you should take another English course,"

2. "Why don't you get more exercise?"

3. "If I were you I'd get a summer job."

4. "I think it might be better to wait until the manager gets here."

5. "You ought to see a doctor about that problem."

6. "Don't buy a used car"

9. Rewrite the following *commands, requests, offers, suggestions, advice, invitations* in Reported speech.

1. "Boys, sit in the front of the bus."

2. "I can give you a ride to the airport."

3. "Shall we stay home and watch TV?"

4. "I'd look for another job if I were you."

5. "Will you hold my packages for me?"

6. "Why don't you take up jogging?"

7. "Shall I get you an aspirin?"

8. "Could you please wait a minute?"

9. "Don't shoot until I give the order."

10. "Would you mind repeating the question, Dr Peterson?"

11. "Why don't we go to the beach for a swim?"

12. "Would you like to come to lunch?"

13. "Would you like a cup of coffee?"

14. "Would you like me to help?"

15. "How about going out tonight?"

10. Join the ideas, using *so as to*, *so that*, *in order to*.

1. She studies hard. She wants to get a good job when she finishes university.

2. We flew direct to Rome. We didn't want to get stuck in London.

3. We need to get up early. We don't want to be late for the train.

4. He has joined a gym. He wants to be healthy and fit for the summer.

5. They hid the letter. They didn't want him to find out the truth.

6. She didn't go to town yesterday. She didn't want to spend any money.

7. She bought a new car. She plans to drive around Europe this summer.

8. Mary did her Christmas shopping early. She didn't want to do it on Christmas Eve.

9. I went to the market early. I wanted to buy some fresh fish.

10. I will give you the map. I hope you will not get lost.

11. Join the ideas, using the correct words/phrases in brackets

1. Aspirin is relatively safe for most adults. It should be administered very carefully to children. (however / moreover)

2. Pilots had a strike. All flights had to be cancelled. (as a result of / also)

3. I drove at a steady 50 mph, I wanted to save fuel. (so as to / besides)

4. The cost of food and clothing has come down in recent years. Fuel prices have fallen quite considerably. (similarly / however)

5. The company provides cheap Internet access. It makes shareware freely available. (in order to / in addition)

6. It was clear Lucy was unhappy. It comes as no surprise she has decided to resign. (nevertheless / therefore)

7. Most people in the office come to work by car. I don't come to work by car. (still / unlike)

8. Samuel trained every day. He wanted to improve his performance. (in order to / yet)

9. Sandy was filling out the forms. I called Jimmy from the airport. (while / so)

10. The survey was on quite a small scale. It provided a lot of useful information.
(nevertheless / also)

11. I have trouble with grammar. I have trouble with reading. (both... and / since)

12. We didn't enjoy the day. The weather was so awful. (while / because)

13. Why don't you start out early? You won't have to hurry. (so that / as a result)

14. A bowl of instant oatmeal costs about \$.15. Regular oatmeal costs only \$.05 per bowl. (like / whereas)

15. She joined the company only a year ago. She's already been promoted twice.
(although / furthermore)

16. The organization gives help and support to people in need. It raises money for local charities. (as well as / in order to)

17. The clams were delicious. The eggplant was excellent. (In contrast / Likewise)

18. Many exam candidates lose marks simply. They do not read the questions properly.
(because / although)

19. Most computer users have never received any formal keyboard training. Their keyboard skills are inefficient. (eventually / consequently)

20. Television is a highly entertaining medium. It can be an excellent educational tool. (also / yet)

III. AFTER READING THOUGHTS

A. UNDERSTANDING THE STORY

Part 1

1. What class did Mr. Hibler teach?
2. Why did the students get a substitute?
3. What did the substitute teacher do the first thing she came into the class?
4. What story did she tell the class?
5. What was John's answer to the question "What is six times eleven?"?
6. What word did Tommy find difficult to write?

Part 2

1. Where do teachers have their lunch?
2. What did Miss Ferenzi bring for lunch?
3. What did the students study after the recess?
4. What did Miss Ferenzi tell the class about Egyptians?
5. What kind of animal is gryphon?
6. What did Tommy do the first thing he came home?

Part 3

1. What stories did Miss Ferenzi tell the class on the second day?
2. What did Miss Ferenzi bring and do when she was back in early December?

3. Who told on Miss Ferenzi ?
4. Who had a fight when Miss Ferenzi left?
5. What class did they have when Miss Ferenzi left?
What did they study?
6. What did they learn about the parts of the mouth?

B. READING BETWEEN THE LINES

Part 1

1. Why do you think Miss Ferenzi drew a tree?
2. What was the reason that Miss Ferenzi didn't start the class with pledge of Allegiance?
3. What reason did she give for not correcting arithmetic mistake?
4. What was her reaction to the way a boy wrote the word 'balcony'?

Part 2

1. Why did Miss Ferenzi have her lunch in the classroom?
2. How do students feel about her?
3. Why do you think she told them unusual stories instead of giving an ordinary lesson complete with vocabulary, drills, problems, etc.?
4. Why was the boy happy when he found the word *Gryphon* in the dictionary?

Part 3

1. What was students' reaction to her stories?
2. Why did she look different?
3. Do you think students enjoyed the class on science?
4. What is the meaning of the title as it relates to the plot of the story?

C. ANALYZING THE STORY

1. Complete the chart.

Miss Ferenzi's idiosyncrasies	Reasons she gave	Students' reaction	
		positive	negative
1. drew a tree on the blackboard	the room need a tree		
2. told a story about her family			
3. didn't start the day with Pledges of Allegiance	it doesn't suit her mood		
4. said: 'six times eleven equals sixty eight'	think of it as a substitute fact		
5. was quite satisfied with the way a boy wrote the word 'balcony'	if you don't like a word you don't have to use it		
6. stayed in the class for lunch	didn't care for		
7. told unusual stories			
8. brought a Toro pack and told fortunes			

D. SHARING IDEAS

1. Discuss the attitude of different students to Miss Ferenzi.
2. Why do you think Miss Ferenzi didn't correct the mistake a student made doing multiplication tables?
3. Why did Miss Ferenzi say "If you don't like a word you don't have to use it."?
4. Give examples from the story that show that Miss Ferenzi was unusual in her appearance and behavior.

E. WRITING

1. Pretend to be Miss Ferenzi and write a defense speech explaining why she taught children in an unusual way.
2. Imagine that you are a teacher at the school. Write a letter to the principal of the school informing about Miss Ferenzi's wrongdoings.

UNIT IV

The Moment of Decision

by Stanley Ellin

PART 1

Hugh Lozier was the exception to the rule that people, who are completely sure of themselves cannot be likable. We have all met the sure ones, of course – and I imagine we all share the same amalgam of dislike and envy for them. Dislike, because no one likes to be shouted down or prodded in the chest, and envy, because everyone wishes he himself were so rich in self-assurance that he could do the shouting down and the prodding.

Despite this, and despite the fact that Hugh was my brother-in-law – a curious relationship when you come to think of it – I liked him immensely, just as everyone else did who knew him. He was a big, good-looking man, with clear blue eyes in a ruddy face, and with a quick, outgoing nature eager to appreciate whatever you had to offer. He was overwhelmingly generous, and his generosity was of that rare and excellent kind which makes you feel as if you are doing the donor a favor by accepting it. I wouldn't say he had any great sense of humor, but plain good humor can sometimes be an adequate substitute for that, and in Hugh's case it was. His stormy side was largely reserved for those times when he thought you might have needed his help in something and failed to call on

him for it. Which meant, that ten minutes after Hugh had met you and liked you, you were expected to ask him for anything he might be able to offer.

A month or so after he married my sister Elizabeth she mentioned to him my avid interest in a fine Copley he had hanging in his gallery, at Hilltop, and I can still vividly recall my horror when it suddenly arrived, heavily crated and with his gift card attached, at my barren room-and-a-half. It took considerable effort, but I finally managed to return it to him by foregoing the argument that the picture was undoubtedly worth more than the entire building in which I lived and by complaining that it simply didn't show to advantage on my wall.

Of course, Hilltop and the two hundred years of Lozier tradition that went into it did much to shape Hugh this way. The first Loziers had carved the estate from the heights overlooking the river, had worked hard and flourished exceedingly; its successive generations had invested their income so wisely that money and position eventually erected a towering wall between Hilltop and the world outside. Truth to tell, Hugh was very much a man of the eighteenth century who somehow found himself in the twentieth, and simply made the best of it.

Hilltop itself was almost a replica of the celebrated, but long untenanted, Dane house nearby, and was striking enough to open anybody's eyes at a glance. Gardens ranged from the other side of the house down to the groves which half hid the stables and outbuildings, and past the far side of the groves ran the narrow road, which led to town. The road was a courtesy road, each estate holder along it maintaining his share, and I think it safe to say that for all the crushed rock he laid in it Hugh made less use of it by far than any of his neighbors.

Hugh's life was bound up in Hilltop; he could be made to leave it only by dire necessity; and if you did meet him away from it you were made acutely aware that he was counting off the minutes until he could return. And if you weren't wary you would more than likely find yourself going along with him where he did return, and totally unable to tear yourself away from the place while the precious weeks rolled by. I believe I spent more time at Hilltop than at my own apartment after my sister brought Hugh into

the family. At one time I wondered how Elizabeth took to this marriage, considering that before she met Hugh she had been as restless and flighty as she was pretty.

It turned out that their first meeting had taken place at an art exhibition, a showing of some ultramodern stuff, and she had been intently studying one of the more bewildering concoctions on display when she became aware of this tall, good-looking man staring at her. And, as she put it, she had been about to set him properly in his place when he said abruptly, "Are you admiring that?"

This was so unlike what she had expected that she was taken completely aback. "I don't know," she said weakly. "Am I supposed to?"

"No," said the stranger, "it's damned nonsense. Come along now, and I'll show you something which isn't a waste of time."

"And," Elizabeth said to me, "I came along like a pup at his heels, while he marched up and down and told me what was good and what was bad, and in a good loud voice, too, so that we collected quite a crowd along the way. Can you picture it, darling?"

"Yes," I said, "I can." By now I had shared similar occasions with Hugh, and learned at firsthand that nothing could dent his cast-iron assurance.

"Well," Elizabeth went on, "I must admit that at first I was a little put off, but then I began to see that he knew exactly what he was talking about, and that he was terribly sincere. Not a bit self-conscious about anything, but just eager for me to understand things the way he did. It's the same way with everything. Everybody else in the world is always fumbling and bumbling over deciding anything – what to order for dinner, or how to manage his job, or whom to vote for – but Hugh always knows.

It's not knowing that makes for all those nerves and complexes and things you hear about, isn't that so? Well, I'll take Hugh, thank you, and leave everyone else to the psychiatrists."

So there it was. An Eden with flawless lawns and no awful nerves and complexes, and not even the glimmer of a serpent in the offing. That is, not a glimmer until the day Raymond made his entrance on the scene. We were out on the terrace that day, Hugh and Elizabeth and I, slowly being melted into a sort of liquid torpor by the August sunshine,

and all of us too far gone to make even a pretense at talk. I lay there with a linen cap over my face, listening to the summer noises around me and being perfectly happy.

There was the low, steady hiss of the breeze through the aspens nearby, and now and then the melancholy tink-tunk of a sheep bell from one of the flock on the lawn. The flock was a fancy of Hugh's.

PART 2

My first warning of something amiss came from the sheep – from the sudden sound of their bells clanging wildly and then a baa-ing, which suggested an assault by a whole pack of wolves. I heard Hugh say, "Damn!" loudly and angrily, and I opened my eyes to see something more incongruous than wolves. It was a large black poodle in the full glory of a clownish haircut, a bright red collar, and an ecstasy of high spirits as he chased the frightened sheep around the lawn. It was clear the poodle had no intention of hurting them – he probably found them the most wonderful playmates imaginable – but it was just as clear that the panicky ewes didn't understand this, and would very likely end up in the river before the fun was over.

In the bare second it took me to see all this, Hugh had already leaped the low terrace wall and was among the sheep, herding them away from the water's edge, and shouting commands at the dog, who had different ideas.

"Down, boy!" he yelled. "Down!" And then as he would to one of his own hounds, he sternly commanded, "Heel!" He would have done better, I thought, to have picked up a stick or stone and made a threatening gesture, since the poodle paid no attention whatever to Hugh's words. Instead, continuing to bark happily, the poodle made for the sheep again, this time with Hugh in futile pursuit. An instant later the dog was frozen into immobility by a voice from among the aspens near the edge of the lawn.

"Assieds!" the voice called breathlessly. "Assieds-toi!"

Then the man appeared, a small, dapper figure trotting across the grass. Hugh stood waiting, his face darkening as we watched. Elizabeth squeezed my arm. "Let's get down there," she whispered. "Hugh doesn't like being made a fool of." We got there in time

to hear Hugh open his big guns. "Any man," he was saying, "who doesn't know how to train an animal to its place shouldn't own one."

The man's face was all polite attention. It was a good face, thin and intelligent. There was also something tantalizingly familiar about the newcomer's face, his high forehead, and his thinning gray hair, but much as I dug into my memory during Hugh's long and solemn lecture I couldn't come up with an answer. The lecture ended with a few remarks on the best methods of dog training, and by then it was clear that Hugh was working himself into a mood of forgiveness.

"As long as there's no harm done" he said.

The man nodded soberly. "Still, to get off on the wrong foot with one's new neighbors. "

Hugh looked startled. "Neighbors? You mean that you live around here?"

The man waved toward the aspens. "On the other side of those woods."

"The Dane house?" The Dane house was almost as sacred to Hugh as Hilltop, and he had once explained to me that if he were ever offered a chance to buy the place he would snap it up. His tone now was not so much wounded as incredulous.

"I don't believe it!" he exclaimed.

"Oh, yes, the man assured him, "the Dane house. I performed there at a party many years ago, and always hoped that some day I might own it."

It was the word performed which gave me my clue – that and the accent barely perceptible under the precise English. He had been born and raised in Marseilles – that would explain the accent – and long before my time he had already become a legend.

"You're Raymond, aren't you?" I said. "Charles Raymond."

"I prefer Raymond alone." He smiled. "And I am flattered that you recognize me."

I don't believe he really was. Raymond, the Magician. As the master of sleight of hand who had paled Thurston's star, as the escape artist who had almost outshone Houdini, Raymond would not be inclined to underestimate himself.

He had started with the standard box of tricks, which makes up the repertoire of most professional magicians; he had gone far beyond that to those feats of escape,

which, I suppose, are known to us all by now. The lead casket sealed under a foot of lake ice, the welded-steel strait jackets, the vaults of the Bank of England, the exquisite suicide knot which nooses throat and doubles legs together so that the motion of a leg draws the noose tighter around the throat – all these. Raymond had known and escaped from. And then at the pinnacle of fame he had dropped from sight and his name had become relegated to the past. When I asked him why, he shrugged.

"A man works for money or for the love of this work. If he has all the wealth he needs and has no more love for his work, why go on?"

"But to give up a great career" I protested.

"It was enough to know that the house was waiting here"

"You mean," Elizabeth said, "that you never intended to live any place but here?"

"Never – not once in all these years." He laid a finger along his nose and winked broadly at us, "Of course, I made no secret of this to the Dane estate, and when the time came to sell I was the first and only one approached."

"You don't give up an idea easily," Hugh said in an edged voice.

Raymond laughed. "Idea? It became an obsession really. Over the years I traveled to many parts of the world, but no matter how fine the place, I knew it could not be as fine as that house on the edge of the woods there, with the river at its feet and the hills beyond." He ran his hand abstractedly over the-poodle's head and looked around with an air of great satisfaction. "And now," he said, "here I am."

Here he was, indeed, and it quickly became clear that his arrival was working a change on Hilltop. Or, since Hilltop was so completely a reflection of Hugh, it was clear that a change was being worked on Hugh. He became irritable and restless, and more aggressively sure of himself than ever. He reminded me of a man who is bothered by a speck in the eye, but can't find it, and must get along with it as best he can.

Raymond, of course, was the speck, and I got the impression at times that he rather enjoyed the role. It would have been easy enough for him to stay close to his own house and cultivate his garden, or paste up his album, or whatever retired performers do, but he evidently found that impossible. He had a way of drifting over to Hilltop at odd times, just

as Hugh was led to find his way to the Dane house and spend long and troublesome sessions there.

Both of them must have known that they were so badly suited to each other that the easy and logical solution would have been to stay apart. But they had the affinity of negative and positive forces, and when they were in a room together the crackling of the antagonistic current between them was so strong you could almost see it in the air.

PART 3

Any subject became a point of contention for them, and they would duel over it bitterly: Hugh armored and weaponed with his massive assurance, Raymond flicking away with a rapier, trying to find a chink in the armor. I think that what annoyed Raymond most was the discovery that there was no chink in the armor. As someone with an obvious passion for searching out all sides to all questions and for going deep into motives and causes, he was continually being outraged by Hugh's single-minded way of laying down the law.

He didn't hesitate to let Hugh know that. "You are positively medieval," he said. "And of all things men should have learned since that time, the biggest is that there are no easy answers, no solutions one can give with a snap of the fingers. I can only hope for you that some day you may be faced with the perfect dilemma, the unanswerable question. You would find that a revelation. You would learn more in that minute than you dreamed possible." And Hugh did not make matters any better when he coldly answered: "And I say, that for any man with a brain and the courage to use it there is no such thing as a perfect dilemma."

It may be that this was the sort of episode that led to the trouble that followed, or it may be that Raymond acted out of the most innocent and aesthetic motives possible. But, whatever the motives, the results were inevitable and dangerous.

They grew from the project Raymond outlined for us in great detail one afternoon. Now that he was living in the Dane house he had discovered that it was too big, too overwhelming. "Like a museum," he explained. "I find myself wandering through it

like a lost soul through endless galleries."

The grounds also needed landscaping. The ancient trees were handsome, but, as Raymond put it, there were just too many of them. "Literally," he said, "I cannot see the river for and the trees, and I am one devoted to the sight of running water."

Altogether there would be drastic changes. Two wings of the house would come down, the trees would be cleared away to make a broad aisle to the water, the whole place would be enlivened, It would no longer be a museum, but the perfect home he had envisioned over the years.

At the start of this recitative Hugh was slouched comfortably in his chair. Then as Raymond drew the vivid picture of what was to be, Hugh sat up straighter and straighter until he was as rigid as a trooper in the saddle. His lips compressed. His face became blood-red. His hands clenched and unclenched in a slow, deadly rhythm. Only a miracle was restraining him from an open outburst. I saw from Elizabeth's expression that she understood this, too, but was as helpless as I to do anything about it. And when Raymond, after painting the last glowing strokes of his description, said complacently, "Well, now, what do you think?" there was no holding Hugh.

He leaned forward with deliberation and said, "Do you really want to know what I think?"

Raymond frowned. "Of course,"

Then I'll tell you," Hugh said. He took a deep breath. "I think that nobody but a damned iconoclast could even conceive the atrocity you're proposing. I think you're one of those people who take pleasure in smashing apart anything that's stamped with tradition or stability. You'd kick the props from under the whole world if you could!"

"I beg your pardon," Raymond said. He was very pale and angry. "But I think you are confusing change with destruction. Surely, you must comprehend that I do not intend to destroy anything, but only wish to make some necessary changes."

"Necessary?" Hugh gibed. "Rooting up a fine stand of trees that's been there for centuries? Ripping apart a house that's as solid as a rock? I call it wanton destruction."

"I'm afraid I do not understand. To refresh a scene, to reshape it"

"I have no intention of arguing," Hugh cut in. "I'm telling you straight but that you don't have the right to tamper with that property!"

They were on their feet now, facing each other truculently, and the only thing that kept me from being really frightened was the conviction that Hugh would not become violent, and that Raymond was far too level-headed to lose his temper. Then the threatening moment was magically past. Raymond's lips suddenly quirked in amusement, and he studied Hugh with courteous interest.

"I see," he said. "I was quite stupid not to have understood at once. This property, which, I remarked, was a little too much like a museum, is to remain that way, and I am to be its custodian. A caretaker of the past, one might say, a curator of its relics."

He shook his head smilingly. "But I am afraid I am not quite suited to that role. I lift my hat to the past, it is true, but I prefer to court the present. For that reason I will go ahead with my plans, and hope they do not make an obstacle to our friendship."

I remember thinking, when I left next day for the city and a long hot week at my desk, that Raymond had carried off the affair very nicely, and that, thank God, it had gone no further than it did. So I was completely unprepared for Elizabeth's call at the end of the week. It was awful, she said. It was the business of Hugh and Raymond and the Dane house, but worse than ever. She was counting on my coming down to Hilltop the next day. She had planned a way of clearing up the whole thing, but I simply had to be there to back her up. After all, I was one of the few people Hugh would listen to, and she was depending on me.

"Depending on me for what?" I said. I didn't like the sound of it. "And as for Hugh's listening to me, Elizabeth, isn't that stretching it a good deal? I can't see him wanting my advice on his personal affairs and I just don't like getting mixed up in that thing. Hugh's quite capable of taking care of himself."

"Maybe too capable."

"And what does that mean?"

"Oh, I can't explain now," she wailed. " Believe me, it's serious."

I arrived on the morning train in a bad state. By the time I arrived at the house I was

prepared for almost anything.

But, on the surface, at least, all was serene. Hugh greeted me warmly, Elizabeth was her cheerful self, and we had an amiable lunch and a long talk, which never came near the subject of Raymond or the Dane house. I said nothing about Elizabeth's phone call, but thought of it with a steadily growing sense of outrage until I was alone with her.

"Now," I said, "I'd like an explanation of all this mystery. The Lord knows what I expected to find out here, but it certainly wasn't anything I've seen so far. And I'd like some accounting for the bad time you've given me since that call."

"All right," she said grimly, "and that's what you'll get. Come along."

She led the way on a long walk through the gardens and past the stables and outbuildings. Near the private road, which lay beyond the last grove of trees she suddenly said, "When the car drove you up to the house didn't you notice anything strange about this road?"

"No, I didn't."

"I suppose not. The driveway to the house turns off too far away from here. But now you'll have a chance to see for yourself."

I did see for myself. A chair was set squarely in the middle of the road and on the chair sat a stout man placidly reading a magazine. I recognized the man at once: he was one of Hugh's stable hands, and he had the patient look of someone who has been sitting for a long time and expects to sit a good deal longer. It took me only a second to realize what he was there for, but Elizabeth wasn't leaving anything to my deductive powers. When we walked over to him, the man stood up and grinned at us. "William," Elizabeth said, "would you mind telling my brother what instructions Mr. Lozier gave you?"

"Sure," the man said cheerfully. "Mr. Lozier told us there was always supposed to be one of us sitting right here, and any truck we saw that might be carrying construction stuff or suchlike for the Dane house was to be stopped and turned back. All we had to do is tell them it's private property and they were trespassing. If they laid a finger on us we just call in the police. That's the whole thing."

"Have you turned back any trucks?" Elizabeth asked for my benefit.

The man looked surprised. "Why, you know that, Mrs. Lozier," he said. "There was a couple of them the first day we were out here, and that was all. There wasn't any fuss either," he explained to me. "None of those drivers wants to monkey with trespass."

When we were away from the road again I clapped my hand to my forehead. "It's incredible!" I said "Hugh must know he can't get away with this. That road is the only one to the Dane place, and it's been in public use so long that it isn't even a private thoroughfare any more!"

Elizabeth nodded. "And that's exactly what Raymond told Hugh a few days back. He came over here in a fury, and they had quite an argument about it. And when Raymond said something about hauling Hugh off to court, Hugh answered that he'd be glad to spend the rest of his life in litigation over this business. But that wasn't the worst of it.

The last thing Raymond said was that Hugh ought to know that force only invites force, and ever since then I've been expecting a war to break out here any minute. Don't you see? That man blocking the road is a constant provocation, and it scares me." I could understand that. And the more I considered the matter, the more dangerous it looked.

"But I have a plan," Elizabeth said eagerly, "and that's why I wanted you here. I'm having a dinner party tonight, a very small, informal dinner party. It's to be a sort of peace conference. You'll be there, and Dr. Wynant Hugh likes you both a great deal" she hesitated, "Raymond."

"No!" I said. "You mean he's actually coming?"

"I went over to see him yesterday and we had a long talk. I explained everything to him – about neighbors being able to sit down and come to an understanding. It must have sounded dreadfully inspirational but it worked. He said he would be there."

I had a foreboding. "Does Hugh know about this?"

"About the dinner? Yes."

"I mean, about Raymond's being there."

"No, he doesn't." "Well, something had to be done, and I did it, that's all! Isn't it better than just sitting and waiting for God knows what?"

PART 4

Until we were all seated around the dining-room table that evening I might have conceded the point. Hugh had been visibly shocked by Raymond's arrival, but then, apart from a sidelong glance at Elizabeth which had volumes written in it, he managed to conceal his feelings well enough. He had made the introductions gracefully, kept up his end of the conversation, and, all in all, did a creditable job of playing host.

Ironically, it was the presence of Dr. Wynant which made even this much of a triumph possible for Elizabeth, and which then turned it into disaster. The doctor was an eminent surgeon. Despite his own position in the world he seemed pleased as a schoolboy to meet Raymond, and in no time at all they were as thick as thieves.

It was when Hugh discovered during dinner that nearly all attention was fixed on Raymond and very little on himself that the mantle of good host started to slip, and the fatal flaws in Elizabeth's plan showed through. He regarded the doctor as one of his closest friends, and I have noticed that it is the most assured of men who can be the most jealous of their friendships. All in all, by simply imagining myself in Hugh's place and looking across the table at Raymond who was gaily and unconcernedly holding forth, I was prepared for the worst. The opportunity for it came to Hugh when Raymond was deep in a discussion of the devices used in effecting escapes. They were innumerable, he said. Almost anything one could seize on would serve as such a device. A wire, a scrap of metal, even a bit of paper at one time or another he had used them all.

"But of them all," he said with a sudden solemnity, "there is only one I would stake my life on. Strange, it is one you cannot see, cannot hold in your hand in fact, for many people it does not even exist. Yet, it is the one I have used most often and which has never failed me."

The doctor leaned forward, his eyes bright with interest. "And it is? "

"It is a knowledge of people, my friend. Or, as it may be put, a knowledge of human nature. To me it is as vital an instrument as the scalpel is to you."

"Oh?" said Hugh, and his voice was so sharp that all eyes were instantly turned on him. "You make sleight of hand sound like a department of psychology."

"Perhaps," Raymond said, and I saw he was watching Hugh now, gauging him. "You see there is no great mystery in the matter. My profession – my art, is no more than the art of misdirection, and I am but one of its many practitioners."

"I wouldn't say there were many escape artists around nowadays," the doctor remarked. "But what I want to know is, exactly how does this knowledge of human nature work in your profession?"

"In this way," Raymond said. "One must judge a person carefully. Then, if he finds in that person certain weaknesses, he can state a false premise and it will be accepted without question. Once the false premise is swallowed, the rest is easy. The victim will then see only what the magician wants him to see, or will give his vote to that politician, or will buy merchandise because of that advertising." He shrugged.

"And that is all there is to it"

"Is it?" Hugh said. "But what happens when you're with people who have some intelligence and won't swallow your false premise? How do you do your tricks then? Or do you keep them on the same level as selling beads to the savages?"

"Now that's uncalled for, Hugh," the doctor said. "The man's expressing his ideas. No reason to make an issue of them."

"Maybe there is," Hugh said, his eyes fixed on Raymond. "I have found he's full of interesting ideas. I was wondering how far he'd want to go in backing them up." Raymond touched the napkin to his lips with a precise little flick, and then laid it carefully on the table before him. "In short," he said, addressing himself to Hugh, "you want a small demonstration of my art".

"It depends," Hugh said. "I don't want any trick cigarette cases or rabbits out of hats or any damn nonsense like that. I'd like to see something good."

"Something good," echoed Raymond reflectively. He looked around the room, studied it, and then turned to Hugh, pointing toward the huge oak door, which was closed between the dining room and the living room, where we had gathered before dinner.

"That door is not locked, is it?"

"No," Hugh said, "it isn't. It hasn't been locked for years."

"But there is a key to it?"

Hugh pulled out his key chain, and with an effort detached a heavy old-fashioned key.

"Good. Give it to the doctor. You have faith in the doctor's honor, I am sure?"

"Yes," said Hugh dryly, "I have."

"Very well. Now, Doctor, will you please go to that door and lock it."

The doctor marched to the door, thrust the key into the lock, and turned it. The click of the bolt snapping into place was loud in the silence of the room. The doctor returned to the table holding the key, but Raymond motioned it away. "It must not leave your hand or everything is lost," he warned.

"Now," Raymond said, "for the finale I approach the door, I flick my handkerchief at it" the handkerchief barely brushed the keyhole"and presto, the door is unlocked!"

The doctor went to it. He seized the doorknob, twisted it dubiously, and then watched with genuine astonishment as the door swung silently open.

"Well, I'll be damned," he said.

"Somehow," Elizabeth laughed, "a false premise went down easy as an oyster."

Only Hugh reflected a sense of personal outrage. "All right," he demanded, "how was it done? How did you work it?"

"I?" Raymond said and smiled at all of us with obvious enjoyment. "It was you who did it all. I used only my little knowledge of human nature to help you along the way."

That door was set in advance, and when the doctor thought he was locking it, he wasn't. He was really unlocking it. Isn't that the answer?" Raymond nodded. The door was locked in advance. I made sure of that, because with a little forethought I suspected there would be such a challenge during the evening, and this was the simplest way of preparing for it. I merely made certain that I was the last one to enter this room, and when I did I used this." He held up his hand so that we could see the silver metal in it. "An ordinary skeleton key, of course, but sufficient for an old and primitive lock."

Then Raymond continued, "It was our host himself who stated the false premise when he said the door was unlocked. He was a man so sure of himself that he would

not think to test anything so obvious. The doctor is also a man who is sure, and he fell into the same trap. It is, as you now see, a little dangerous always to be so sure."

"I'll go along with that," the doctor said ruefully, "even though it's heresy to admit it in my line of work. Well, Hugh, like it or not, you must admit the man has proved his point."

"Do I?" said Hugh softly. He sat there smiling a little now, and it was easy to see he was turning some thought over and over in his head.

"Oh, come on, man," the doctor said with some impatience. "You were taken in as much as we were. You know that"

"Of course you were, darling," Elizabeth agreed.

I think that she suddenly saw her opportunity to turn the proceedings into the peace conference she had aimed at, but I could have told her she was choosing her time badly. There was a look in Hugh's eye I didn't like a veiled look, which wasn't natural to him. Ordinarily, when he was angered, he would blow up a violent storm, and once the thunder and lightning had passed he would be honestly apologetic. But this present mood of his was different. There was a slumberous quality in it which alarmed me.

He hooked one arm over the back of his chair and rested the other one on the table, sitting halfway around to fix his eyes on Raymond. "I seem to be a minority of one," he remarked, "but I'm sorry to say I found your little trick disappointing. Not that it wasn't cleverly done – I'll grant that, all right – but because it wasn't any more than you'd expect from a competent locksmith. I'm simply saying that where there's a lock on a door and the key to it in your hand, it's no great trick to open it. Considering our friend's reputation, I thought we'd see more from him than that."

Raymond grimaced. "Since I had hoped to entertain," he said, "I must apologize for disappointing."

"Oh, as far as entertaining goes I have no complaints. But for a real test—"

"A real test?"

"Yes, something a little different. Let's say, a door without any locks or keys to tamper with. A closed door, which can be opened with a fingertip, but which is nevertheless impossible to open. How does that sound to you?"

Raymond narrowed his eyes thoughtfully, as if he were considering the picture being presented to him. "It sounds most interesting," he said at last. "Tell me more about it."

"No," Hugh said, and from the sudden eagerness in his voice I felt that this was the exact moment he had been looking for. "I'll do better than that. I'll show it to you,"

He stood up and the rest of us followed suit—except Elizabeth, who remained in her seat.

PART 5

We were bound for the cellars. I could feel the chill of dampness turning my chest to gooseflesh. We stopped at the very end of the chamber, before what I can best describe as a stone closet built from floor to ceiling in the farthest angle of the walls. It was about four feet wide and not quite twice that in length, and its open doorway showed impenetrable blackness inside. "That's it," he said abruptly. "Plain solid wood, four inches thick, fitted flush into the frame so that it's almost airtight. It's a beautiful piece of carpentry, too, the kind they practiced two hundred years ago. And no locks or bolts. Just a ring set into each side to use as a handle." He pushed the door gently and it swung open noiselessly at his touch. "See that? The whole thing is balanced so perfectly on the hinges that it moves like a feather."

"But what's it for?" I asked. "It must have been made for a reason."

Hugh laughed shortly. "It was. Back in the bad old days, when a servant committed a crime, he was put in here to repent. And since the air inside was good for only a few hours at the most, he either repented damn soon or not at all."

"And that door?" the doctor said cautiously. "That impressive door of yours which opens at a touch to provide all the air needed what prevented the servant from opening it?"

"Look," Hugh said. He flashed his light inside the cell and we crowded behind him to peer in. The circle of light reached across the cell to its far wall and picked out a short, heavy chain hanging a little above head level with a U-shaped collar dangling

from its bottom link.

"I see," Raymond said, and they were the first words I had heard him speak since we had left the dining room. "It is truly ingenious. The man stands with his back against the wall, facing the door. The collar is placed around his neck, and then, since it is clearly not made for a lock it is clamped there, hammered around his neck. The door is closed, and the man spends the next few hours like someone on an invisible rack, reaching out with his feet to catch the ring on the door, which is just out of reach. If he is lucky he may not strangle himself in his iron collar, but may live until someone chooses to open the door for him."

"My God," the doctor said. "You make me feel as if I were living through it."

Raymond smiled faintly. "I have lived through many such experiences, and, believe me, the reality is always, a little worse than the worst imaginings. There is always the ultimate moment of terror, of panic, when the heart pounds so madly you think it will burst through your ribs, and the cold sweat soaks clear through you in the space of one breath. That is when you must take yourself in hand, must dispel all weakness, and remember all the lessons you have ever learned. "Unfortunately for the usual victim of such a device," he concluded sadly, "since he lacks the essential courage and knowledge to help himself, he succumbs."

"But you wouldn't Hugh said.

"I have no reason so think so."

"You mean," and the eagerness was creeping back into Hugh's voice, stronger than ever, "that under the very same conditions as someone chained in there two hundred year ago you could get this door open Raymond stood silent for a long minute, face strained with concentration, before he answered.

"Yes," he said. "It would not be easy, the problem is made formidable by its very simplicity, but it could solved."

"How long do you think it would take you?"

"An hour at the most."

Hugh asked the question slowly, savoring it. "Would you want to bet on that?"

"Now, wait a minute," the doctor said. "I don't like any part of this."

"And I vote we adjourn for a drink," I put in. "Fun's fun, but we'll all wind up with pneumonia, playing games down here." Neither Hugh nor Raymond appeared to hear a word of this. Then Raymond said, "What is this bet you offer?"

"This. If you lose, you get out of the Dane house inside of a month, and sell it to me."

"And if I win?"

It was not easy for Hugh to say it, but he finally got it out. Then I'll be the one to get out. And if you don't want to buy Hilltop I'll arrange to sell it to the first comer."

It was the doctor who recovered most quickly. "You're not speaking for yourself, Hugh," he warned. 'You're a married man. Elizabeth's feelings have to be considered."

"Is it a bet?" Hugh demanded of Raymond. "Do you want to go through with it?"

"I think before that, there is something to be explained." Raymond paused, then went on slowly, "I'm afraid I gave the impression – out of false pride, perhaps – that when I retired from my work it was because of a boredom, a lack of interest in it. That was not altogether the truth. In reality, I was required to go to a doctor some years ago, doctor listened to the heart, and suddenly my heart became the most important thing in the world. I tell you this because, while your challenge strikes me as being a most unusual and interesting way of settling differences between neighbors, I must reject it for reasons of health."

"You were healthy enough a minute ago," Hugh said in a hard voice.

"Perhaps not as much as you would want to think, my friend."

"In other words," Hugh said bitterly, "there's no accomplice handy, no keys in your pocket to help out, and no way of tricking anyone into seeing what isn't there. So you have to admit you're beaten."

Raymond stiffened. "I admit no such thing. All the tools I would need even for

such a test as this I have with me. Believe me, they would be enough.

Hugh laughed aloud, and the sound of it broke into small echoes all down the corridors behind us. It was that sound – the living contempt in it – which sent Raymond into the cell.

Hugh wielded the hammer, a short-handled but heavy sledge, which tightened the collar into a circlet around Raymond's neck. When he was finished I saw the pale glow of the radium-painted numbers on a watch as Raymond studied it in his pitch darkness.

"It is now eleven," he said calmly. "The wager is that by midnight this door must be opened, and it does not matter what means are used. Those are the conditions, and you gentlemen are the witnesses to them."

Then the door was closed, and the walking began. Back and forth we walked – the three of us – as if we were being compelled to trace every possible geometric figure on that stony floor. For a while there was a counterpoint to this scraping of feet from inside the cell. It was a barely perceptible clinking of chain coming at brief, regular intervals. Then there would be a long silence, followed by a renewal of the sound. When it stopped again I could not restrain myself any longer. I held up my watch and saw with dismay that barely twenty minutes had passed.

Thirty minutes had passed. Forty. ... Forty-five.

I was shocked when I saw that Hugh's face was dripping with sweat, and that beads of it gathered and ran off while I watched. It was while I was looking at him in fascination that it happened. The sound broke through the walls of the cell like a wail of agony heard from far away, and shivered over us as if it were spelling out the words. "Doctor? it cried. "The air!"

It was Raymond's voice. What was clearest in it was the note of pure terror, the plea growing out of that terror. "Air!" it screamed, the word bubbling and dissolving into a long – drawn sound which made no sense at all.

And then it was silent. We leaped for the door together, but Hugh was there first,

his back against it, barring the way" Keep back!" he cried. "Don't come any nearer, I warn you!"

The fury in him, brought home by the menace of the weapon, stopped us in our tracks.

"Hugh," the doctor pleaded, "I know what you're thinking, but you can forget that now. The bet's off, and I'm opening the door on my own responsibility. You have my word for that"

"Do I? But do you remember the terms of the bet, Doctor? This door must be opened within an hour — and it doesn't matter what means are used! Do you understand now? He's fooling both of you. He's faking a death scene, so that you'll push open the door and win his bet for him. But it's my bet, not yours, and I have the last word on it!"

I saw from the way he talked, despite the shaking tension in his voice, that he was in perfect command of himself, and it made everything seem that much worse.

"How do you know he's faking?" I demanded. "The man said he had a heart condition. What right do you have to gamble with his life?"

"Damn it, don't you see he never mentioned any heart condition until he smelled a bet in the wind? Don't you see he set his trap that way, just as he locked the door behind him when he came into dinner! But this time nobody will spring it for him!"

"Listen to me," the doctor said, and his voice cracked like a whip. "Do you concede that there's one slim possibility of that man being dead in there, or dying?"

"Yes, it is possible — anything is possible."

"I'm not trying to split hairs with you! I'm telling you that if that man is in trouble every second counts, and you're stealing that time from him. And if that's the case, I'll sit in the witness chair at your trial and swear you murdered him! Is that what you want?"

Hugh's head sank forward on his chest. I could hear the breath drawing heavily in his throat, and when he raised his head, his face was gray and haggard. The

torment of indecision was written in every pale sweating line of it.

And then I suddenly understood what Raymond had meant that day when he told Hugh about the revelation he might find in the face of a perfect dilemma. It was the revelation of what a man may learn about himself when he is forced to look into his own depths, and Hugh had found it at last. In that shadowy cellar, while the relentless seconds thundered louder and louder in our ears, we waited to see what he would do.

I. LANGUAGE FOCUS

A. VOCABULARY

Part 1

1. exception (to the rule) – a person or a thing that does not follow a rule or pattern

It's been cold, but today's an exception.

The spelling of this word is an interesting exception to the rule.

2. amalgam – a mixture or combination of different things or substances

The band's songs is an interesting amalgam of different musical styles

3. prod – to push, encourage smb. to do smth.

His wife prodded him for years before he began writing his first novel.

4. rich in – having a lot of smth.

Nearly all nuts are rich in proteins

5. immensely – very much; extremely

Counseling has helped their relationship immensely.

6. appreciate – to be grateful for smth.

I don't need any help, but I appreciate your offer.

to understand or enjoy/recognize the value of so. or sth.

Jan's abilities are not fully appreciated by her employer.

7. overwhelming – very large or greater, more important etc. than any other

There is overwhelming evidence that smoking damages your health.

An overwhelming majority of the members were against the idea.

Congress voted overwhelmingly in favor of the bill

8. avid – very keen or enthusiastic

Tim's father is an avid collector of old blues and jazz records.

9. vivid – clear, real

I've got vivid memories of that summer.

He had a vivid picture of her in his mind.

10. recall – to remember deliberately a particular event, fact

You may recall that only 3 U.S. athletes won gold medals.

I don't recall ever meeting her.

11. barren – empty

Thousands of years ago the surface was barren desert.

12. overlook – to have a view of, look out onto /disregard, neglect, ignore

Taden's restored house overlooks an alpine alley.

13. flourish – to grow, prosper, be successful

The plants flourished in the warm sun.

Foley's career has flourished.

14. exceedingly – extremely, greatly

exceed – to be greater in degree or quantity/to go beyond the limit of smth.

Working hours must not exceed 42 hours a week.

His performance exceeded our expectations.

He was fined for exceeding the speed limit.

15. successive / in succession – coming and following one after another

The food shortage is a result of 3 years of successive floods.

The US women have won 11 international softball titles in succession.

16. replica – an exact copy of something, esp. a building, a gun, or a work of art

The building is an exact replica of the original Globe theatre.

17. celebrated – famous

Martin Luther King Jr. gave his celebrated speech before the Lincoln Memorial in 1963.

Van Gogh, perhaps Holland's most celebrated artist, died in poverty.

18. range (from ...to.../between ..and) – to include different things or people

There were 120 students whose ages ranged from 10 to 18.

The population of these cities ranges between 3 and 5 million.

The shoes range in price from \$25 to \$100.

19. estate – a large area of land in the country that is owned by a person or a family

We visited George Washington estate, Mount Vernon..

20. dire (necessity, need) – disastrous, extremely serious or terrible

The situation doesn't seem as dire as you described it.

21. precious – valuable, important /rare and worth a lot of money

We cannot afford to waste precious time.

The robe was encrusted with precious metals and stones.

22. restless – unable to keep still, anxious, uneasy

The kids grew restless and impatient.

23. bewildering – confusing esp. because there are too many choices or things

Changes in society are happening so fast, they sometimes seem bewildering.

There was a bewildering variety of styles to choose from.

24. concoction – a combination of different things

Jell – shots are a bizarre concoction of sweet gelatin and vodka.

25. abrupt(ly) – unexpected often with unpleasant results/seeming unfriendly

His resignation was an abrupt end to an impressive career.

His new boss was abrupt and didn't seem interested in his proposals.

26. unlike – different

Fanny argues that her temper and Henry's are too unlike to get married.

27. picture – to imagine, see in mind

I can't picture Jay as a ballet dancer.

28. first hand – by direct personal experience

Clara knew from first-hand experience that living in a foreign country would be difficult.

29. dent – depression, scrape, chip/to damage the surface of smth.

Emma backed into a tree, leaving a dent in the car's rear bumper.

Some idiot dented my car door last night.

No one was injured, but the car was scratched and dented.

30. cast-iron – a type of iron that is hard, breaks easily, and is shaped in a mould

They also hope to renovate an old, cast-iron elevator at a cost of \$ 300, 000.

a cast-iron excuse/alibi/guarantee etc. – an excuse etc that is very certain

Do not expect a cast-iron guarantee of success.

According to Ken Harris, she has a cast-iron alibi.

31. assurance – confidence in one's own abilities

She handled the horse with the calm assurance.

32. fumble for/with – to use hands in an awkward way while doing smth.

He fumbled in his pocket for some coins.

She fumbled with her notes and began to speak.

33. bumble on/about – to speak or move in a way that is hard to hear or understand

What are you bumbling about?

The players looked like bumbling idiots on the field.

34. torpor – a state of being not active because you are lazy or sleepy:

She tried to rouse him from the torpor into which he had sunk.

PRACTICE

1. Write the word closest in meaning to the following groups of words.

1. fruitless, devoid, sterile, dry, bare, poor _____
2. alloy, blend, compound, mishmash, fusion _____
3. combination, mixture, plan, preparation, project _____
4. enormous, great, huge, infinite, tremendous, vast _____
5. admire, like, respect, value, rate highly, esteem _____
6. beat, excel, outdo, surpass, surmount, overtake _____
7. exclusion, deviation, irregularity, peculiarity, rarity _____
8. awful, catastrophic, desperate, dreadful, urgent _____
9. continuous, consecutive, following, in a row, sequent _____
10. costly, dear, valuable, exquisite, fine, irreplaceable _____

2. Choose the word that best completes each sentence.

1. We _____ his music but we can't afford \$400 a seat.
A. exceed B. appreciate C. overtake D. surmount
2. She drinks this herbal _____ .
A. alloy B. concoction C. deviation D. amalgam
3. Migrating birds cover _____ distances every winter.

- A. immense B. sequent C. barren D. catastrophic
4. The landscape was _____ with no tree or shrub in sight.
- A. enormous B. successive C. exquisite D. barren
5. The band's songs is an interesting _____ of different musical styles.
- A. peculiarity B. exclusion C. amalgam D. rarity
6. Most of the buildings in town are modern, but the church is a(n)_____.
- A. fusion B. exception C. blend D. preparation
7. The statue was covered with _____ jewels .
- A. infinite B. consecutive C. immense D. precious
8. The country is in _____ need of food aid.
- A. rare B. bare C. successive D. dire
9. Births _____ deaths by a ratio of 3 to 1.
- A. exceeded B. appreciated C. valued D. rated
10. The food shortage is a result of three _____ years of floods.
- A. urgent B. devoid C. successive D. fruitless

3. Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

concoction	amalgam	barren	exception	appreciate
precious	dire	immensely	successive	exceed

- We can't fully _____ foreign literature in translation.
- Good writing is unfortunately is a/an _____ rather than a rule.
- He made some weird _____ for me to drink.
- The team has had five _____ victories.
- They are _____ wealthy.
- He has a _____ apartment in a poor area.
- In the Far East, home computer ownership is expected to _____ that of the US and Europe combined.

8. The planes are delivering _____ supplies of medicine and food.
9. The country's Duma is a (n) _____ of different political parties
10. Analysts's _____ predictions about the economy have failed to come true.

4. Choose the word closest in meaning to a boldfaced word.

- | | | | | |
|----------------------|---------------|-----------------|----------------|------------------|
| 1. appreciate | A. surpass | B. value | C. award | D. excel |
| 2. precious | A. great | B. sequent | C. valuable | D. infinite |
| 3. concoction | A. mixture | B. fusion | C. deviation | D. exclusion |
| 4. exception | A. sequence | B. irregularity | C. combination | D. mishmash |
| 5. successive | A. tremendous | B. valuable | C. following | D. exquisite |
| 6. barren | A. vast | B. sterile | C. desperate | D. irreplaceable |
| 7. amalgam | A. alloy | B. project | C. preparation | D. peculiarity |
| 8. immense | A. dear | B. devoid | C. dreadful | D. vast |
| 9. exceed | A. esteem | B. respect | C. surpass | D. flourish |
| 10. dire | A. fruitless | B. dry | C. fine | D. awful |

Part 2

- 1. be amiss** – wrongly, there is a problem

Mr. Mc Phirson insisted there was nothing amiss at the agency.

- 2. suggest** – to indicate

Opinion polls suggest that only 10% of the population trusts the government.

- 3. assault** – violent attack

He served 3 years in prison for assault.

to strongly criticize ideas, plans

The senator was assaulted with abuse from angry demonstrator.

- 4. incongruous** – not appropriate or unexpected in a particular situation

The high-tech building is incongruous with its rural surroundings.

- 5. chase** – to quickly follow someone or something in order to catch them

The dogs saw him running and chased him.

The police chased the suspect along Seven Avenue.

6. futile – useless

Rescue workers made a futile attempt to save the people trapped in the collapsed building.

7. pursuit – search, chase

The suspect crossed the bridge with four cars in pursuit

the act of trying to achieve smth in a determined way

I was too involved in the pursuit of wealth to spend time with my kids.

8. squeeze – to press something firmly together with your fingers or hand

She smiled as he squeezed her hand.

He squeezed the trigger, but nothing happened.

9. tantalize – to provoke, tease

They tantalized him with dreams of promotion.

10. sacred – relating to god or religion

Koran is the sacred book of Islam.

11. incredulous – unable or unwilling to believe something

Everyone looked incredulous when I said I used to drive a taxi.

12. barely – with great difficulty or effort /almost not

She was very old and barely able to walk.

His voice was barely audible.

13. perceptible – able to be seen

According to Reynolds, there has been a slight but perceptible change in public attitude lately.

14. sleight of hand – quick movements with your hands when doing tricks

the use of skilful tricks and lies to achieve smth.

Miller's financial sleight of hand resulted in the loss of \$2 million in tax revenue.

15. pale – to seem worse, less important or less impressive

This year "Swan Lake" pales in comparison to the last year's production.

16. outshine – to be clearly better than smb. else

Stone effortlessly outshines the other members of the cast.

17. underestimate – to rate too low

People often underestimate the importance of training.

estimate – to judge the value, size, cost etc of smth., without calculating it exactly

The tree is estimated to be at least 700 years old.

Scientists estimate that smoking reduces life expectancy by around 12 years on average.

18. feat – something that you do that shows a lot of skill, strength, or courage etc.

The tunnel is a remarkable feat of engineering.

Steger crossed Antarctica, and performed a similar feat at the North Pole.

19. strait-jacket – a garment with long sleeves tied up to prevent a person to behave violently

Cameron knew how good his son really was, and encouraged him to break free of the pop straitjacket.

20. vault – a room with thick walls and a strong door where money, jewels are kept

Beneath the floor is the family vault of the Kolowrats.

21. at the pinnacle of – the most successful, powerful, exciting part of smth.

By 1965, Fellini had reached the pinnacle of his commercial success.

22. relegate – to give so. or sth. a less important position than before.

I was relegated to the kid's table for Thanksgiving.

23. obsession – extreme interest in smth or worry about smth.

Freeing the hostages became his obsession.

24. speck – a very small mark, spot, or piece of something

She realized that the specks on his shirt were not dirt but blood.

25. affinity – a close similarity between two things because of shared qualities and features

There is a remarkable affinity between the two religions.

a strong feeling that you like sth. or so.

Children have a natural affinity for mountain biking, because they have no fear.

PRACTICE

1. Write the word closest in meaning to the following groups of words.

1. ineffective, useless, vain, superficial, unavailing, _____

2. chase, hunt, quest, search, tracking, trail _____

3. assess, calculate roughly, evaluate, gauge, judge _____

4. affection, attraction, compatibility, preference _____

5. almost, hardly, only just, scarcely, faintly _____

6. demote, downgrade, banish, dispatch, exile _____
7. noticeable, detectable, apparent, discernable, evident _____
8. torment, torture, tease, tempt, taunt, bait _____
9. infatuation, *idée fixe*, passion, mania, complex _____
10. inconsistent, disparate, inappropriate, unsuitable _____

2. Choose the word that best completes each item.

1. It's _____ to speculate what might have been.
 A. almost B. apparent C. inconsistent D. futile
2. The _____ smell of barbecue was in the air.
 A. gauging B. relegating C. tantalizing D. demoting
3. They noted a _____ change in his behavior.
 A. superficial B. perceptible C. incongruous D. ineffective
4. There is a close _____ between French and Latin languages.
 A. tracking B. complex C. obsession D. affinity
5. He has an _____ alibi.
 A. incongruous B. futile C. discernable D. unavailing
6. Women tended to be _____ to typing and filing jobs.
 A. estimated B. relegated C. judged D. teased
7. The mechanic _____ the cost of repairs at \$350
 A. estimated B. downgraded C. tempted D. banished
8. Gambling became a (n) _____, and he eventually lost everything.
 A. preference B. pursuit C. amalgam D. obsession
9. He neglected his family in the _____ of his personal ambitions.
 A. passion B. attraction C. pursuit D. exile
10. Mary had _____ enough money to live on.
 A. vainly B. barely C. appropriately D. unsuitably

3. Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

relegated	affinity	barely	incongruous	estimate
futile	pursuit	tantalize	perceptible	obsession

1. Many of the alchemists' efforts were devoted to a _____ search for a method of turning common metals into gold.
2. His pulse was barely _____ upon arrival at the hospital.
3. Crows have a(an) _____ for bright shiny things, so they sometimes pick up bits of mirrors, metal, jewelry and carry them back to their nests.
4. Can you _____ how much fabric you will need for the curtains?
5. Having a picnic in a graveyard struck some as _____.
6. How can you be so cruel as to _____ the poor dog by offering him tidbits, that you will never let him have.
7. We _____ had enough money to pay for our tickets.
8. He has an enthusiasm for art, to the point of _____ in my opinion.
9. Carlo has been _____ to a more junior position in the company.
10. People have to move to other areas in _____ of work.

4. Choose the word closest in meaning to a boldfaced word.

- 1. perceptible** A. inconsistent B. superficial B. C. detectable D. disparate
- 2. estimate** A. evaluate B. demote C. dispatch D. taunt
- 3. affinity** A. infatuation B. temptation C. attraction D. quest
- 4. futile** A. noticeable B. ineffective C. appropriate D. scarce
- 5. tantalize** A. exile B. gauge C. chase D. tempt
- 6. relegate** A. track B. downgrade C. judge D. torment
- 7. incongruous** A. evident B. unavailing C. inappropriate D. discernable
- 8. barely** A. hardly B. direly C. vainly D. apparently

- | | | | | |
|---------------------|------------------|--------------|---------------|---------------|
| 9. obsession | A. compatibility | B. idée fixe | C. affection | D. assessment |
| 10. pursuit | A. passion | B. mania | C. preference | D. search |

Part 3

1. contention – argument and disagreement between people

A key area of contention is the call for wilderness to be opened to oil and gas drilling

2. single-minded – only thinking about one particular aim or goal

She is very single-minded about her career.

3. face / be faced with – to have to deal with a difficult situation

Weber is facing the biggest challenge of his career.

The city council is faced with the task of making budget cuts.

4. dilemma – a situation in which you have to make a choice

Many parents struggle with the dilemma of dividing time between work and children.

5. revelation – a surprising fact about so. or smth. that was previously a secret

Each new revelation received extensive news coverage.

6. inevitable – certain to happen and impossible to avoid

A further escalation of the crisis now seems inevitable.

7. wander – to walk slowly around an area, usually without a clear direction or purpose

I'll wander around the mall for half an hour.

8. literal – basic or original

A trade war is not a war in the literal sense.

The name of the cheese is Dolcelatte, literally meaning 'sweet milk'.

9. drastic – strong, sudden and often severe

NATO threatened more drastic action if its terms were not met.

10. envision – to imagine smth. that you think might happen in the future

He envisions a day when every household will have access to the Internet.

11. miracle – a great example of a particular quality or skills

The Golden Gate is a miracle of engineering.

12. restrain from – to hold smb. back from some action/limit smth.

She couldn't restrain herself any longer and started screaming abuses at him.

The economy growth will slow down enough to restrain inflation.

13. outburst – sudden powerful expression of emotion, esp. anger

I was embarrassed by his outburst.

14. complacent – pleased with the situation, esp. smth. you have achieved

We've been winning, but we are not going to get complacent.

15. iconoclast – someone who attacks established ideas

I think I know why my father became a soldier, a professional fighter, and an iconoclast.

16. conceive – to imagine a situation or what smth. is like

Most of us find it difficult to conceive what life is like on the space station.

17. atrocity – extremely cruel or violent action, esp. during a war

Both sides were accused of committing atrocities during the war.

18. propose – to suggest something as a plan or course of action

The government is proposing changes to the current legislation.

19. smash – to break into pieces

Vandals had smashed all the windows.

Several cups fell to the floor and smashed to pieces.

20. comprehend – to understand smth. that is complicated or difficult

Even scientists do not comprehend this phenomenon.

21. gibe/jibe – to say something that is intended to make someone seem silly

His distrust of the power of critics made him ready to jibe at David Sylvester.

22. wanton – extravagant, cruel, careless

The Home Secretary took a tough line, saying that he would not tolerate wanton destruction and violence.

23. property – the thing or things that someone owns

The hotel is not responsible for any loss or damage to guests' personal property.

Some of the stolen property was found in Mason's house.

24. truculent – easily made angry and always willing to argue with people

The National Assembly was being truculent over the budget proposals.

25. conviction – a very strong belief or opinion

Americans held the conviction that anyone could become rich if they worked hard.

Religious convictions have a strong influence on people's behavior.

26. level headed – calm, sensible in making judgments or decisions

A good pilot needs to be calm and level-headed.

He had a level-headed approach to financial matters.

27. courteous – having good manners and respect for other people

The officers were extremely courteous and well-trained.

28. custodian – someone who takes care of a public building,

He is a custodian at the stadium.

custodian – someone who tries to protect a traditional set of beliefs, attitudes, etc.

29. caretaker/ janitor (Am). – someone whose job is to look after a building

The caretaker, an old man and frightened by what he saw, went to his wife who then called the police.

30. stretch – to exaggerate

He is a good player but calling him 'world class' is stretching it.

31. on the surface – smth. that is easy to notice, but which is not the only thing

On the surface, it seems a simple story.

Half an hour later Enid had calmed down, at least on the surface.

32. amiable – friendly and easy to like

The driver was an amiable young man.

33. squarely – straight on something and centrally

Dr Soames jammed his hat squarely on his head.

directly and firmly

He turned and faced her squarely.

34. placid – calm

The setting sun turned the placid ocean into a sea of gold.

35. suchlike – things of that kind

The U.N. had to borrow from the fund to pay salaries and suchlike.

36. trespass – to go onto someone's private land without their permission

She was arrested for trespassing on government property.

37. benefit – the advantage or good /useful effect of smth., or help that you get from smth.

Most parents want to give their children the benefits of good education.

extra money or services given to employee in addition to their salary

The benefits include full medical cover when traveling abroad.

38. thoroughfare – the main road through a place such as a city or village

The motel was off the main thoroughfare.

39. litigation – matter coming before court, case, lawsuit

Litigation costs will run you into a fortune.

40. foreboding – bad omen, forewarning

When Anne didn't arrive, Paul had a foreboding that she was in danger.

PRACTICE

1. Write the word closest in meaning to the following groups of words.

1. predicament, problem, jam, fix, puzzle, quandary _____
2. malevolent, malicious, vicious, evil, immoral _____
3. monstrosity, brutality, outrage, viciousness, cruelty, _____
4. presage, prophecy, premonition, bad omen, forewarning _____
5. enter illegally, intrude, invade, offend, encroach _____
6. advantage, aid, asset, assistance, service _____
7. tranquil, serene, peaceful, calm, quiet _____
8. forceful, radical, harsh, strong, extreme, dire _____
9. discord, strife, struggle, quarrel, disagreement _____
10. satisfied, contented, gratified, unconcerned _____

2. Choose the word that best completes each item.

1. The brutal destruction of an entire village was one of the worst _____ of the war.
A. discords B. dilemmas C. omens D. atrocities
2. She is a sweet, _____ child who rarely gets upset or angry.
A. placid B. complacent C. malicious D. harsh
3. We waited for news of the meeting with a sense of _____ .
A. contention B. foreboding C. disagreement D. predicament
4. He was outraged by the _____ destruction of a historic building.
A. dire B. unconcerned C. wanton D. drastic
5. He told me I was _____ on a private land.
A. trespassing B. restraining C. conceiving D. stretching
6. A change in law would be to everyone's _____.

A. revelation B. benefit C. litigation B. invasion

7. The police are taking _____ measures against car thieves.

A. drastic B. vicious C. tranquil B. cruel

8. We simply cannot afford to be _____ about the future of our car industry.

A. malicious B. radical C. complacent B. peaceful

9. The subject remains a source of great _____ in the family.

A. premonition B. assumption C. contention D. asset

10. I'm in a _____ about this job offer.

A. presage B. discord C. dilemma D. strife

3. Complete each item with a word from the box.

benefits	wantonly	dilemma	placid	complacent
	trespass	atrocitiy	contention	drastic
foreboding				

1. There's a danger of becoming _____ if you win a few games.

2. There was a worried look on her normally _____ face.

3. Many of the forests have been _____ cut down.

4. _____ changes are needed if environmental catastrophe is to be avoided.

5. The company provides medical _____.

6. She had a sense of _____ that the plane would crash.

7. He will be prosecuted for _____.

8. Many women are faced with the _____ of choosing between work and family commitments.

9. Many _____ have been committed against innocent people in war time.

10. The issue of subsidies is a source of _____ in Europe.

4. Choose the word closest in meaning to a boldfaced word.

- | | | | | |
|----------------------|---------------|----------------|--------------|----------------|
| 1. placid | A. malevolent | B. serene | C. extreme | D. unconcerned |
| 2. benefit | A. advantage | B. puzzle | C. presage | D. discord |
| 3. trespass | A. disagree | B. invade | C. outrage | D. assist |
| 4. contention | A. assistance | B. offence | C. intrusion | D. quarrel |
| 5. wanton | A. radical | B. satisfied | C. serene | D. evil |
| 6. foreboding | A. strife | B. advantage | C. bad omen | D. cruelty |
| 7. drastic | A. extreme | B. vicious | C. tranquil | D. gratified |
| 8. complacent | A. satisfied | B. peaceful | C. malicious | D. quiet |
| 9. atrocity | A. struggle | B. quandary | C. cruelty | D. prophesy |
| 10. dilemma | A. aid | B. predicament | C. outrage | D. premonition |

Part 4

1. concede – to admit that something is true, or to allow (something)

Officials concede (that) the plan isn't the best one.

2. sidelong – looking at smb in a way that seems secret, or disapproving

He gave Oliver a sidelong glance.

3. creditable – praiseworthy

He did a creditable job of impersonating the singer Tina Turner.

4. eminent – famous and important, noticeable or worth remarking

The commission consisted of fifteen eminent political figures.

This shows eminent good sense.

5. mantle – a covering, or a layer of something that covers a surface

They escaped under the mantle of darkness.

6. regard – to consider or think about (something) in a particular way

Laura is highly regarded by her colleagues.

Though 20 years old, the book is still regarded as the authority on the subject.

7. effect – to carry out/cause smth. to take place

Conly saw religion as a way to effect real change in her family.

8. innumerable – very many, or too many to be counted/countless

She's served on innumerable committees.

She has received innumerable get-well cards and flowers.

9. gauge – to measure, calculate by using a device /to make a judgment about

It was not easy to gauge his height from this distance, but he seemed pretty tall.

It's difficult to gauge how they'll react when they hear the news.

10. state – to formally say or write a piece of information or your opinion:

Please state your name and address.

Rembert again stated his intention to resign from Parliament.

The law states that you are innocent until proved guilty.

11. premise – hypothesis, an idea or theory on which a statement or action is based

We don't accept the premise that cutting taxes will lead to increased economic productivity.

12. swallow – to move food or liquid /to accept (something) without question

My throat is so sore that it really hurts when I swallow.

Not surprisingly, this excuse was too much for them to swallow.

13. uncalled for – insulting or offensive *I consider your remarks uncalled for.*

14. detach – to separate or remove (something) from something else

Detach the lower half of the form and return it to the above address.

Their new house has a detached garage.

15. presto – is said when something is done very quickly

You fold it like this and presto! It turns into a hat.

16. obvious – easily seen, recognized, or understood

For obvious reasons, he needs to find work soon.

They were obviously exhausted after the game.

17. forethought – careful thought or planning, anticipation

A long back-packing trip requires a lot of forethought.

18. rueful – feeling or expressing sorrow or regret.

Jane looked at her with a rueful smile.

19. prove – to show that smth. is true, esp. by providing facts, information etc.

He claims the police destroyed records that could prove the officer's guilt.

Grinde referred to the book to prove his point.

20. point – a single fact, idea, or opinion in an argument or discussion

They only agreed on one point - to have another meeting.

He makes some interesting points about our relationship to food.

21. proceedings – an event or a series of things that happen:

We watched the proceedings in the street below.

At this point in the proceedings, my doctor offered me a choice.

22. aim at/for/to – to plan for a specific purpose; intend

I'm aiming to lose 10 pounds before July.

The administration is aiming at reducing the federal deficit by 20 %.

She was aiming for promotion.

23. veiled (threat/attempt/hint) – not expressed directly

The promoters were willing to put aside their thinly veiled racism in order to sell tickets.

She made a veiled reference to his past mistakes.

24. minority – less than half of a total number or amount; the smaller part of smth.

Only a minority of people support military action.

Jews and Roman Catholics belonged to religious minorities.

25. grant – to give official permission to do smth.

He was granted American citizenship last year. She refused to grant our request for an interview.

PRACTICE

1. Write the word closest in meaning to the following groups of words.

1. disengage, disentangle, divide, segregate, separate _____
2. admirable, respectable, praiseworthy, deserving _____
3. estimate, judge, measure, assess, rate, compute _____
4. affirm, announce, declare, formulate, specify _____
5. apparent, evident, distinct, conspicuous, noticeable _____
6. accomplish, achieve, complete, create, execute, fulfill _____
7. accept, admit, capitulate, recognize, acknowledge _____
8. assumption, basis, proof, evidence, supposition _____
9. conceal, cover, curtain, disguise, hide, screen, shield _____
10. distinguished, celebrated, famous, notable, prominent _____

2. Choose the word that best completes each item.

1. He had to _____ that some of her suspicions had been justified.

- A. concede B. gauge C. conceal D. execute
2. Companies can afford to hire the most _____ lawyers to represent them.
- A. conspicuous B. eminent C. separate D. obvious
3. The conclusions in the report were based on a false _____.
- A. premise B. estimate C. screen D. premises
4. The most _____ example of an information source is a dictionary.
- A. obvious B. deserving C. veiled D. distinguished
5. There is no question that Clinton was the leader of the Great Group that _____ his victory.
- A. segregated B. stated C. effected D. announced
6. Please _____ the last section of this form, fill it in, and return it to us.
- A. disguise B. detach C. rate D. compute
7. The company produced a _____ performance last year.
- A. celebrated B. creditable C. apparent D. evident
8. Recent polls have _____ the president's support at 85% or more.
- A. affirmed B. gauged C. screened D. disengaged
9. The government needs to clearly _____ its policy on UN intervention.
- A. state B. fulfill C. achieve D. create
10. The details of the evacuation are _____ in secrecy.
- A. divided B. veiled C. disentangled D. judged

3. Complete each item with a word from the box.

obvious	conceded	veil	effect	detach
eminent	states	premise	creditable	gauge

1. The receipt clearly _____ that refunds are not allowed.
2. A fine drizzle began to _____ the hills.
3. The tires on the toy cars may _____ and become a hazard to small children.

4. She _____ that the problem was mostly her fault.
5. It was a very _____ result for the team.
6. For _____ reasons the police cannot give any more details about the case.
7. They hope to find ways to _____ the effectiveness of drug rehab programs.
8. We started from the _____ that the situation can get no worse.
9. He is one of the Britain's most _____ scientists.
10. If correctly administered, these drugs can _____ radical cures.

4. Choose the word closest in meaning to a boldfaced word.

- | | | | | |
|----------------------|----------------|----------------|------------------|----------------|
| 1. eminent | A. evident | B. notable | C. conspicuous | D. noticeable |
| 2. effect | A. accomplish | B. disentangle | C. disguise | D. estimate |
| 3. veil | A. separate | B. cover | C. judge | D. achieve |
| 4. gauge | A. conceal | B. create | C. measure | D. execute |
| 5. concede | A. fulfill | B. assess | C. screen | D. admit |
| 6. creditable | A. admirable | B. famous | C. distinguished | D. conspicuous |
| 7. obvious | A. apparent | B. deserving | C. celebrated | D. respectable |
| 8. premise | A. evidence | B. discord | C. rate | D. screen |
| 9. detach | A. accept | B. complete | C. disengage | D. hide |
| 10. state | A. disentangle | B. capitulate | C. specify | D. segregate |

Part 5

- 1. bound for** – traveling toward a particular place, intending to go there

The captain told us that the ship was bound for New York.

- 2. chamber** – a room used for a special purpose, especially an unpleasant one

- 3. angle** – the space between two straight lines or surfaces that join each other

You didn't measure the angle accurately.

- 4. impenetrable** – dense

An impenetrable fog halted traffic.

- 5. solid** – hard or firm, with a fixed shape, and not a liquid or gas

It was good to be back on solid ground again.

The ship's sonar can detect the presence of solid objects in the water.

consisting completely of one type of material

The table is made of solid oak.

6. frame – the structure or main supporting parts of a piece of furniture, vehicle, etc.

There's nothing wrong with the frame of the chair, but the upholstery needs replacing.

7. airtight – closed, impenetrable

Store cookies are in an airtight container.

8. repent – to be sorry

At a press conference Ching repented her crimes.

9. provide (with) – to give something to someone or make it available

Tea and biscuits will be provided.

The project is designed to provide young people with work.

10. dangle – to hang, suspend

The phone has been left dangling by its cord.

11. ingenious – clever, creative

It was ingenious of her to solve this problem quickly.

12. collar – the part of a shirt, coat etc that fits around your neck

He loosened his collar and tie.

13. clamp – to fasten, clench, fix

Clamp the two parts together until the glue dries.

14. reach – the distance that you can stretch out your arm to touch something

Keep chemicals out of the reach of children.

Keep a glass of water within reach.

within (easy) reach of something – close to a place

The tourist attractions are within easy reach of the hotel.

15. strangle – to choke, kill

He was strangled with a nylon cord.

16. ultimate – last, best, basic

Ultimate responsibilities lie with the President.

The ultimate goal of the military was to restore the democratic government.

17. dispel – to drive away thought, belief

We hope to dispel the belief that scientists work in isolation in windowless rooms.

18. succumb – to die, collapse, yield

Lewis succumbed to cancer in 1985.

I succumbed to temptation and ordered a merique pie.

19. formidable – huge, impressive

Russia has a formidable nuclear arsenal.

20. adjourn for – to stop a proceeding, for a while

The chairman has the power to adjourn the meeting at any time.

21. recover – to return to a normal condition; become better after illness

The economy hasn't recovered from recession.

Doctors say she will recover soon.

22. altogether – to completely or in total

The train slowed down and then stopped altogether.

Altogether, she gave away some \$60 million in her lifetime.

23. require – to need something

Campbell's broken leg will probably require surgery.

be required to do something – a law or rule says you must do it or have it

You are required by law to wear a seat belt.

Regulations require that students attend at least 90% of the lectures.

24. reject – to refuse to accept

Ceara rejected calls for his resignation.

25. accomplice – a person who helps smb. such as a criminal to do smth. wrong

The robbers and their accomplice were given severe prison sentences.

26. handy – near and easy to reach

Add a rail to keep kitchen equipment handy.

27. trick (into) – to deceive smb. in order to get smth. from them

She was tricked into signing the paper.

28. contempt – disrespect

Jimmy has nothing but contempt for his boss.

29. cell – a small room in a prison or police station where prisoners are kept

He spent a night in the cells at the local police station.

30. wager – money or smth gambled, fifty-fifty, a bet

She made a wager that her team will win.

31. means (of) – a way of doing or achieving something

For most people, the car is still their main means of transport.

The only means of communication was sign language.

32. compel – to force to act

The law will compel employers to provide health insurance.

33. counterpoint to – different things are compared in an interesting

I have used my interviews with parents as a counterpoint to a professional judgment.

34. plea – appeal, defense

Taylor made an emotional plea for donations.

35. bar – to block a way, road, path, etc.

The policeman barred the entrance to the embassy.

36. menace – danger, hazard

Physiologists believe he could be a menace to society.

37. terms – the conditions that are set for an agreement, contract, arrangement etc.

Under the terms of the agreement, the debt would be repaid over 20 years.

Small businesses have to compete on equal terms with large organizations.

38. tension – mental stress, pressure, nervousness

The room was filled with tension as students waited for the test to begin.

39. gamble with – to do sth. risky

Doctors shouldn't gamble with their patients' lives just to test new drugs.

40. haggard – worn, weakened, emaciated

The jurors looked haggard on their tenth day of deliberation.

PRACTICE

1. Write the word closest in meaning to the following groups of words.

1. bullet proof, hermetic, impassable, impermeable, dense _____

- 2. call for, demand, involve, need, entail, obligate _____
- 3. terminal, last, final, eventual, utmost, decisive _____
- 4. disperse, scatter, expel, banish, cancel, eliminate _____
- 5. surrender, yield, throw in the towel, give in, break down _____
- 6. suspend, flap, hang, swing, brandish, sway, wave _____
- 7. suspend, defer, delay, postpone, put off, interrupt _____
- 8. dismiss, brush aside, , turn down, veto, refuse _____
- 9. impel, force, drive, motivate, subdue, overpower _____
- 10. anxiety, discomfort, strain, stress, worry, suspense _____

2. Choose the word that best completes each item.

- 1. Passengers are _____ by law to wear seat belts.
 A. required B. banished C. forced D. rejected
- 2. The country has not yet _____ to international pressure to stop nuclear testing.
 A. compelled B. obligated C. succumbed D. dismissed
- 3. The trial was _____ for two weeks
 A. adjourned B. dispelled C. impelled D. surrendered
- 4. The Lottery committee has _____ the advice of accountants.
 A. subdued B. rejected C. entailed D. dangled
- 5. A light bulb _____ from a wire in the ceiling.
 A. dangles B. disperses C. defers D. drives
- 6. I was _____ to acknowledge the force of his arguments.
 A. suspended B. refused C. swayed D. compelled
- 7. The incident affected the _____ outcome of the war.
 A. dense B. impermeable C. ultimate D. anxious
- 8. The company is trying to _____ rumors about a take-over.
 A. involve B. expel C. dispel D. swing
- 9. The trees formed a(n) _____ barrier
 A. impenetrable B. utmost C. flapping D. terminal

10. The incident has further increased the _____ between the two countries.

- A. interruption B. tension C. refusal D. veto

3. Complete each item with a word from the box.

adjourn	compel	tension	impenetrable	dispel
reject	succumb	ultimate	require	dangle

1. People are free to accept or _____ Stone's interpretation of the facts.
2. Measures are needed to reduce the _____ between two states.
3. The law will _____ employers to provide health insurance.
4. Independence remains their _____ political goal.
5. He was keen to _____ any illusions we might have.
6. The city _____ only after a short siege.
7. The court will _____ for lunch.
8. The document was written in _____ lawyer's jargon.
9. We sat on the edge of the pool with our legs _____ in the water.
10. The job _____ a college degree and knowledge of computers.

4. Choose the word closest in meaning to a boldfaced word.

- | | | | | |
|------------------------|--------------|-------------|---------------|-----------------|
| 1. dangle | A. demand | B. disperse | C. hang | D. subdue |
| 2. dispel | A. scatter | B. suspend | C. brandish | D. defer |
| 3. compel | A. entail | B. cancel | C. swing | D. force |
| 4. reject | A. interrupt | B. dismiss | C. refuse | D. eliminate |
| 5. succumb | A. give in | B. impel | C. expel | D. turn down |
| 6. ultimate | A. dense | B. final | C. impassable | D. bullet proof |
| 7. tension | A. dismissal | B. delay | C. yield | D. anxiety |
| 8. adjourn | A. banish | B. motivate | C. postpone | D. involve |
| 9. impenetrable | A. hermetic | B. utmost | C. terminal | D. eventual |

10. require A. need B. swing C. cancel D. brandish

B. PHRASAL VERBS

Parts 1 & 2

1. **call on** – to visit for a short time ;to come to see (someone); visit

If you would like to take a closer look at the product, one of our salesmen would call on you in your home.

2. **take to** – to start to like smb/smth.

Charles was an odd character whom Kelly had never really taken to.

3. **put off** – to cause smb to dislike smb or smth., or to discourage smb from doing smth

Don't let your failures put you off trying harder.

4. **make for** – to move toward smb./smth.

Sue made for the snack bar while Brian bought tickets.

5. **come up with** – to think of an idea, answer

We've been asked to come up with some new ideas.

6. **snap up** – to buy something immediately, esp. because it is very cheap

People were snapping up bargains.

7. **make up** – to combine together to form a particular system, group, result etc.

Two members of the staff and eight parents make up the school committee.

8. **get along (with)** – to succeed in dealing with a situation, especially a difficult one

How's Sam getting along at university?

PRACTICE

1. MATCH PHRASAL VERBS WITH THEIR DEFINITIONS.

- | | |
|-------------------|---------------------|
| 1. snap up | a. suggest |
| 2. make up | b. to discourage |
| 3. get along with | c. to move |
| 4. call on | d. to buy |
| 5. make for | e. to form |
| 6. take to | f. to succeed |
| 7. put off | g. to visit |
| 8. come up with | h. to start to like |

2. Replace the underlined words with the appropriate phrasal verbs.

1. Tickets for the concert were bought within three hours of going on sale.
2. The experience caused him to dislike politics.
3. I was able to succeed pretty well in Spanish when I was in Mexico.
4. She went to the hospital to visit a sick friend.
5. I think it's time we moved home.
6. Is that the best excuse you suggest?
7. We started to like each other the first time we met and have been friends ever since.
8. Protons and neutrons are combined of smaller components called quarks.

3. COMPLETE THE SENTENCES WITH THE PHRASAL VERBS.

1. How did you _____ at the interview?
2. Marjorie usually _____ some good ideas.
3. The shoplifter was _____ the door when the security guard stopped him.
4. Do you _____ a bargain whatever it costs?
5. I spend most of the day _____ clients
6. In Los Angeles, minority groups _____ 64% of the population.
7. I wanted to see the new play but the newspaper review _____ me _____.
8. Their daughter has _____ a group of peace activists.

Part 3

1. come down – to be destroyed or pulled down, to fall to the ground

The Berlin Wall came down in 1989.

2. rip apart – to tear smth. quickly and violently

A bomb blast ripped the plane apart at 32,000 feet.

3. cut in – to interrupt smb. when they are speaking

I'm sorry I didn't mean to cut in like that.

While we were watching the late show, an announcer cut in to tell who won the election.

4. tamper with – to touch smth. without permission, esp. in order to deliberately damage it

He noticed that the instruments had been tampered with.

I don't see the point in tampering with a system that's worked fine so far.

5. go ahead with – to begin or continue with smth.

Work on the new building will go ahead in May.

Jeff and Thena decided to go ahead with their wedding.

6. carry off – to do smth. difficult successfully

Rubens carried off several important diplomatic missions.

Both actors have the stylish self-confidence needed to carry off these roles.

7. count on – to depend on smb. or smth. esp. in a difficult situation/ to expect smth.

You can count on me. We're all counting on winning this contract.

8. clear up – to explain smth. or make it easier to understand

There are a lot of questions about the case that still haven't been cleared up.

9. back up – to provide support or help for someone or something

I'll back you up if they do not believe you.

These theories have not been backed up by research.

10. call in – to ask someone to come and help you with a difficult situation:

The government then called in troops to deal with the disturbances.

11. monkey with – to interfere

You'll break the tape player if you don't stop monkeying with it.

12. get away with – to do smth. bad and not be punished

Somehow basketball team gets away with not going to class.

He lied but he got away with it.

13. haul off – to take smb. somewhere they do not want to go, esp. to prison

Maloney was hauled off for questioning in the murder

Police handcuffed him and hauled him off to jail.

14. break out – to start

We had been driving all day and eventually an argument broke out between the children.

A serious epidemic has broken out in South America and thousands of people are dying.

I was still living in London when the war broke out.

PRACTICE

1. MATCH PHRASAL VERBS WITH THEIR DEFINITIONS.

- | | |
|------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. clear up | a. to succeed |
| 2. tamper with | b. to interrupt |
| 3. back up | c. to start |
| 4. go ahead with | d. to depend on |
| 5. carry off | e. to explain |
| 6. cut in | f. to avoid punishment |
| 7. break out | g. to support |
| 8. get away with | h. to touch smth. to spoil it |
| 9. count on | i. to be destroyed |
| 10. come down | j. to begin or continue doing smth. |

2. Replace the underlined words with the appropriate phrasal verbs.

1. We didn't depend on so many people being on vacation.
2. Thieves escaped with computer equipment worth \$300 000.
3. Riots started in the prison
4. They've decided to continue plans to build 50 new houses on the site.
5. The spy planned to deceive the enemy soldiers and did it very well.
6. There are a couple of questions we need to explain before the discussion begins.
7. A lot of trees were destroyed in the storm.
8. Police revealed that the telephone had been touched.
9. She kept interfering in on our conversation.
10. Jane would support me if she were here.

3. COMPLETE THE SENTENCES WITH THE PHRASAL VERBS.

1. She is _____ _____ earning only about 45% of her previous salary in the first year.
2. There's no evidence to _____ _____ his accusations.
3. The government intends to _____ _____ _____ its tax cutting programs.
4. It was clear that someone has _____ _____ the computer.
5. The ceiling _____ _____ with a terrible crash.

6. You shouldn't let her _____ _____ _____ telling lies.
7. We need to _____ _____ the misunderstanding.
8. A price war may _____ _____ if there is too much competition.
9. The young actress _____ _____ the performance without a hitch.
10. Sorry to _____ _____ on you, but there are one or two things I don't understand.

Parts 4 & 5

1. keep up – to continue/maintain

I don't think I can keep this up any longer.

I have started getting up at five a.m. to study, but I don't know if I can keep this up.

2. turn into – to change or develop into smth. different

What started out as an enjoyable holiday turned into a nightmare.

The sofa turns into a bed.

A few weeks later, winter had turned into spring.

3. show through – to be noticeable

The old dog was so thin that his bones showed through his skin.

Whatever part he is playing his own character shows through.

4. hold forth – to express your opinions for a long time

She held forth all through lunch on a variety of subjects.

5. turn over – to think about something carefully, considering all the possibilities

I kept turning the idea over in my mind.

6. take in – to trick so into believing smth that is not true

Don't be taken in by their promises.

She took us in with that scheme.

7. blow up – to become very angry with smb.

She blew up at me last Saturday for no reason.

8. put in – (written) to interrupt someone in order to say something

'How old are you?' 'Sixteen.' 'I'm sixteen too,' put in Dixie.

9. wind up in/at/with – to be in an unpleasant situation or place (syn. end up)

You know you're going to wind up in court over this.

10. be off – to cancel *Sorry, but the meeting is off.*

PRACTICE

1. MATCH PHRASAL VERBS WITH THEIR DEFINITIONS.

- | | |
|---------------|---|
| 1. blow up | a. to express opinion |
| 2. be off | b. to change |
| 3. hold forth | c. to deceive |
| 4. wind up | d. to maintain |
| 5. turn into | e. to think |
| 6. take in | f. to cancel |
| 7. keep up | g. to get angry |
| 8. turn over | h. to find oneself in an unpleasant situation |

2. Replace the underlined words with the appropriate phrasal verbs.

1. If he goes on like this he's going to found himself in jail.
2. He drove along considering in his mind what Bruce had said.
3. David Lean expressed his opinion on the disastrous state of the movie industry.
4. She deceived me completely with her story.
5. I was surprised at the way he became angry with at Hardy.
6. You've heard about tomorrow's match? It's cancelled.
7. How long can the economic boom continue?
8. Hollywood discovered her and made her a star.

3. COMPLETE THE SENTENCES WITH THE PHRASAL VERBS.

1. We eventually _____ staying in a little hotel a few miles from town.
2. I'm afraid the party _____ . Nick won't let us use his apartment.
3. In a flash, the prince _____ a frog.
4. Tom was in the corner, _____ about the economic situation.
5. _____ your work and you'll succeed eventually.
6. Don't be _____ by their promises.
7. He _____ at his secretary, but apologized after lunch.
8. He began to _____ the scheme _____ in his mind.

C. IDIOMS

Parts 1 & 2

1. to (good/best) advantage – in a way that shows the best features of smb. or smth.

The picture shows to advantage against a plain wall.

Professional players can use their knowledge of their opponent's weaknesses to good advantage.

2. make the best of – to accept an unsatisfactory situation with good humor

He broke his leg and can't move very well, but he's cheerful and making the best of it.

3. make (good/full/the best) use of – to use smth. that is available

Make full use of every chance you have to speak English.

4. be bound up (in/with) – to be very closely connected with a problem or situation

The people of Transkei began to realize that their future was inseparably bound up with that of South Africa.

5. asput it – to say or write smth. using words in a particular way

When women joined the organization, it 'took on a new look,' as news reports put it.

6. set/put so in one's place – to criticize smb. who has become over-confident

One of the students was becoming increasingly aggressive until the teacher decided to put him in his place.

7. make entrance – to suddenly appear somewhere

She made her entrance after all the other guests had arrived.

8. make a pretense (to/of) – to behave as if smth. is true

Tollitt made no pretense of being surprised.

9. make a fool of smb. – to make smb. look silly

The woman made a fool of herself when she knocked over a display in a crowded shop.

10. get off on the wrong foot – to start a job, relationship, etc. badly

Jackie and I never really liked each other. For some reason we got off on the wrong foot because of misunderstanding, and we never really became friends.

11. drop/vanish from sight – to disappear

The plane dropped from sight on the radar screen.

12. have a way of – usually happen or behave in a particular way/have a habit

Don't worry too much. These problems have a way of working out.

Complete the sentences with the idioms in the box.

to advantage	make better use of	put in his place
has a way of	as...puts it	dropped out of sight
bound up with	make the best of	got off on the wrong foot

1. _____ John _____: "Life would be nice if we didn't have to work."
2. I seem to have _____ with the new boss.
3. The jeweler's window showed the diamonds _____.
4. Ruth _____ ignoring me that drives me mad.
5. Climate change is _____ the whole issue of energy.
6. We could _____ our resources.
7. That clever answer _____ the questioner in his _____.
8. We watched his car as it rounded the bend and _____.
9. We are stuck here so we might as well _____ it.

Part 3

1. chink in the armor – a weak point in smb.'s character, argument etc.

Chinks are starting to appear in president's armor

HIV virus has a chink in its armor which could lead to a protective vaccine and make Aids as rare as polio, a researcher announced this weekend.

2. lay down the law – to say smth. with an authoritative tone/to give strict orders

Father loves to lay down the law on political issues. He thinks he could run the country better than the Prime Minister.

3. snap of fingers (informal Am.) – very easy

Persuading dad to loan us a car was a snap.

4. make matters better / worse – to make a good / bad situation even better / worse

Making matters worse the family has received several threats.

5. there is no holding smb (back) – you can't prevent smb. from doing smth.

There is no holding him back when it comes to music.

6. take/find pleasure in smth. – to enjoy doing smth. very much

He seems to take pleasure in proving that other people are wrong.

7. get mixed up – to be involved in an illegal or dishonest activity

I'd have to be crazy to get mixed up in something like this now.

8. lay a finger/hand on – harm or hurt

If you lay a finger on him I'll kill you.

Complete the sentences with the idioms in the box.

took pleasure	chink in the armor
lay a finger on	laid down the law
snap of fingers	got mixed up in

1. Don't you dare _____ the vase!

2. Harry _____ a fight after the game.

3. There was always a chance that with their superior knowledge, they might find the _____.

4. He _____ in pointing out my mistakes.

5. The principal called in the students and _____ to them about skipping classes.

6. Pasta dough is _____ to make.

Part 4

1. have volumes written/speak volumes – to be full of meaning

The fact that the team won every game of the season speaks volumes for their new trainer.

2. as thick as thieves – to be friendly with each other

Old man Grant went to school with Maloney, the other lawyer in town. They are as thick as thieves. Maloney does all his business.

3. stake one's life on – used to say that you are completely sure of smth.

I'd stake my life on his loyalty.

4. make an issue of – to argue about smth. or treat it as important

It seemed silly to make an issue of it.

5. make certain – to find out whether smth. is true/to check smth

I think there's a bus at 8, but you'd better call to make certain.

You'll have to leave soon to make certain of getting there.

6. fall in the trap of – to make a mistake that you should try to avoid

Parents often fall into the trap of doing everything for their children.

Many of the world's economies were falling into the trap as Australia in trying to boost their economy through government spending.

7. line of work/business – type of work or area of interest

What line of business are you in exactly?

8. follow suit / the example – to do the same thing

When Allied Stores reduced their prices, other companies were forced to follow suit.

He praised Jane and encouraged others to follow her example.

Complete the sentences with the idioms in the box.

fall into the trap	stake my life on
as thick as thieves	follow suit
line of work	speaks volume

1. My _____ pays pretty well.

2. Don't _____ of feeling guilty.

3. The nice present she gave you, _____ for what she thinks of you.

4. Les and Harry have been _____ for years.

They both have a large share in the industrial redevelopment project.

5. I'm sure that's Jesse - I'd _____ it.

6. They have just put up the price of gas and other oil companies are expected _____.

Part 5

1. at (the) most – not more than you say

It's about ten minutes down the road, fifteen at the most.

A new engine would cost, at most, two thousand dollars.

2. take oneself in hand – begin to deal with someone's problems etc)

She took herself in hand, the essay she told herself firmly had to be shelved.

3. learn your lesson – to understand what you must do in the future

I hope Pereira has learned his lesson about how to treat employees.

There were important lessons to be learned from these discoveries.

4. settle differences – agree to stop arguing or fighting

We hope that the factions will be able to settle their differences by peaceful means.

5. bring sth. home to smb. – to make smb. realize how serious smth. is

John was very lazy at school, but a serious talk with careers master really brought home to him the importance of passing his school-leaving examination.

6. stop/halt/freeze so. in one's tracks – to make smb. stop by frightening or surprising them

The question stopped Alice in her tracks.

The horse stopped dead in her tracks and refused to move.

7. have/take one's word for – accept that what smb. says is true

Take my word for it - she's really funny.

We only have his word for it that he has already paid.

You must take my word for it that I saw it by accident.

8. the last/final word (on) – to have the power to decide whether or not to do smth.

the last statement in discussion

My boss has the last word on hiring staff.

The final word rests with the board.

9. be in perfect/total command – to be able to control your emotions and thoughts

She is a confident leader and in total command of herself.

10. something is in the wind – smth. is happening or going to happen

Once again, changes are in the wind.

If there was a talk of a merger in the wind, I'm sure we'd hear about it.

11. set/lay the trap – to invent a plan to show that smb. is doing smth. wrong

The cheaters were caught when one teacher set a trap by casually leaving a copy of the test on her desk.

12. split hairs – to argue about small and unimportant differences

John is always splitting hairs. He often starts an argument about something small and unimportant.

1. Complete the sentences with the idioms in the box.

stopped in its tracks	learn the lesson	at the most
settle your differences	brought home to	split hairs
have the final word	in the wind	set a trap for

1. The deer heard the noise and it _____.
2. There were fifty people there _____.
3. Why don't you _____ and be friends again?
4. I'm going to let you _____ this time.
5. Tom's close friends knew that the marriage was _____.
6. The sight of his pale face _____ me how ill he was.
7. She had _____ him and he had walked straight into it.
8. Don't _____ about whose turn it is to wash dishes and make the beds.
9. The government has failed to _____ of history.

2. Complete the sentences with the right words.

1. Diana didn't like to wash the dishes but she made _____.
2. I made a _____ of myself in front of everyone.
3. Make _____ scuba equipment meets safety standards.
4. I want to make _____ of my time while I'm here.
5. This is not very important. I don't want to make an _____ it.
6. I think I locked it but we'd better make _____.
7. Making _____, the family has received several threats.
8. It makes _____ to buy the most up-to-date version.
9. I make no _____ to being an expert to the subject.

3. Complete the sentences with the verbs *make* and *do*.

1. Peter ate some of those berries but they didn't _____ him any harm.
2. The government has _____ some major policy changes.

3. We don't want to _____ obstacles to travel between the two countries.
4. He _____ great trick with a hat and two rabbits.
5. The noise in the classroom _____ the learning difficult.
6. Ellen rose from the table and they _____ the gesture of rising too.
7. He wouldn't take any money. He insisted he was _____ it as a favor.
8. There's nothing we can _____ about it.
9. He _____ no secret of the fact that he would like to manage the club.
10. We don't usually accept checks in but for you we'll _____ an exception.
11. I'll _____ anything you say.
12. I'm always the one who _____ the cooking and cleaning and stuff around here.

D. WORD STUDY

EVALUATE ▪ **ASSESS** ▪ **GAUGE** ▪ **ESTIMATE** ▪
APPRECIATE

1. evaluate – to consider how useful, or valuable a plan, suggestions, etc.

The police have to stop evaluating their employees' performance in terms of the number of arrests they made.

We need to evaluate the success of the campaign.

2. assess – to consider smb's work, ideas, or products so as to judge how good they are

The booklet aims to help parents assess recent educational changes.

to calculate what the value or cost of smth. is, esp. before buying or selling it

The garage assessed the cost of repairing the car.

3. gauge – to judge what someone's feelings, intentions or reactions are likely to be

It's difficult to gauge exactly how he is going to respond.

to guess or judge in advance how much smth. will measure, use, cost, etc.

It is difficult to gauge water requirements before the race actually starts.

4. estimate – to calculate an amount or price but without being very exact

The police department estimates that the number of violent crimes will increase this year by about 15%.

5. appreciate – to recognize the good qualities of smb/smth.

Her abilities are not fully appreciated by her employer.

You can't really appreciate foreign literature in translation.

to be grateful for smth.

Thanks ever so much for your help, I really appreciate it.

Alan asked me to tell you how much he appreciated your hospitality when he was in London.

to understand and realize that smth. is true.

to understand how serious or important a situation or problem is

He did not fully appreciate the significance of signing the contract.

It is difficult to appreciate how bad the situation has become.

Complete the sentences with the appropriate word.

1. We _____ the situation very carefully before we made a decision.
2. I'd _____ it if you let me get on with my job.
3. This test provides an excellent way of _____ applicants' suitability.
4. The thermostat will _____ the temperature and control the heat.
5. I wonder if he really _____ the seriousness of the situation.
6. Our staff will help you _____ how much fabric you will require.
7. All the bad weather here makes me _____ home.
8. Police _____ that over 10,000 people took part in the demonstration.
9. Your work will be _____ by members of the management team.
10. The new Market research project is designed to _____ what the consumer wants.
11. I took the ring to a jeweler to have its value _____.
12. Students' level of understanding can sometimes be difficult to _____.
13. We've arranged a meeting to _____ their proposals.
14. Advanced technology enables us to _____ the trajectory of the rocket to the nearest centimeter.
15. The value of the house was _____ at \$75,000.
16. When all the figures are available, it should be possible to _____ how much we'll need to spend.
17. There was not enough time to _____ the information before the meeting.
18. I don't think you _____ the difficulties this delay will cause.

19. He has written a guidebook that _____ the quality of Californian hotels.
20. The committee did not _____ how much such a program would cost.
21. I don't need any help, but I do _____ your offer.
22. Psychologists will _____ the child's behavior.
23. It can be difficult to _____ the effectiveness of different treatments.
24. Scientists _____ that smoking reduces life expectancy by around 12 years on average.
25. It is difficult to _____ what the other party's next move will be.

LAST ▪ FINAL ▪ CLOSING ▪ CONCLUDING ▪ LATTER

1. last – after all others in order or time

Look at the last name on the list.

The next game will be the last one of the 2006 season.

most recent, or the nearest one to the present time

The last time I ate there, I got sick.

2. final – last in a series of actions, events, parts of a story etc./at the end of a period or process

We must watch the final episode of “Twin Peaks” tomorrow night.

I'd like just to make one final point before we move on to another subject.

There's always the risk that something will go wrong in the final stages of the operation.

I'll give you \$500 for it, and that's final.

3. closing – the last in a period or event, esp. a very exciting one.

In his closing remarks, Pollard emphasized the need for more research.

Barnes scored the winning goal in the closing seconds of the game.

Will the closing years of the 20th century see the launch of a new program to save the planet?

4. concluding – the last in an event or in a piece of writing

We will return to these points in the concluding chapter.

In the concluding stages of the ceremony, garlands of flowers are placed upon the altar.

5. the latter – the second of two things or people being compared with each other

We interviewed one inexperienced candidate and an experienced one, and then chose the latter.

Complete the sentences with the appropriate word.

1. In his _____ remarks, Santos drew attention to the issues facing developing countries.
2. There were two candidates for the Presidency, Lyndon B Johnson and Senator Barry Goldwater. The _____ was known to hold extreme right-wing views.
3. The Appeal court will, at the _____ stage, test its own opinions against those of the judges in the original hearing.
4. Robert is studying physics and math and hopes to specialize in the _____.
5. He got as far as the _____ interviews, but he didn't get the job unfortunately.
6. The UN was established during the _____ stages of the Second World War.
7. The show won't finish till midnight and the _____ train goes before then.
8. I turned on the TV just in time to catch the _____ minutes of the race.
9. The _____ date for application is 25 May.
10. Are you going to watch the _____ episode of 'The X-Files' tomorrow night?
11. Where unemployment and crime are high, it can be assumed that the _____ is due to the former.
12. My boss has approved the project, but it's the Chief Executive who has the _____ say.
13. In his _____ speech, he thanked the organizers of the conference.
14. We meet again on the _____ Friday in September, that's 27th.
15. The Board is expected to make its _____ decision on the merger by August 12th.
16. Students are preparing for their _____ examinations.
17. The town has a concert hall and two theaters. The _____ were built in 1950.
18. In the _____ shot of the film, Hoffman walks away from the camera without looking back.
19. I was the _____ person in the queue for tickets.
20. After the defense finishes its _____ argument, the prosecution will have the opportunity to reply.

SUGGEST ▪ OFFER ▪ PROPOSE

1. offer – to give someone smth or to offer to give smth.

They offered him a very good salary, but he turned it down.

He offered me a cup of tea before I left.

The school offers this scholarship every year.

to provide something that people need or want

Canada has much to offer in terms of location and climate.

Your doctor should be able to offer advice on diet.

The course offers the opportunity to specialize in the final year.

A number of groups offer their services free of charge.

to help or to do smth. for smb.

It was nice of Amy to offer to baby-sit this Friday.

My brother offered to help me paint the house.

2. suggest – to offer an idea or a plan for someone to consider

Where do you suggest we go after the movie?

To save money the girls suggested traveling in one car.

She wrote to me and suggested a meeting.

I suggest you phone before you go round there.

to indicate, show evidence/results/data/studies etc.

Opinion polls suggest that only 10% of the population trusts the government.

Trends in spending and investment suggest a gradual economic recovery.

All the evidence suggests that the problem has improved in recent years.

to tell smb. about smb. or smth. that is suitable for a particular job

John Roberts has been suggested for the post of manager.

3. propose – to formally suggest something as a plan or course of action

(at a meeting and ask people to vote on it)

The report also proposes extending the motorway.

I propose we continue the meeting tomorrow.

In his speech he proposed that the UN should set up an emergency centre for the environment.

propose a motion/amendment/resolution etc.

The resolution was proposed by the chairman of the International Committee.

to formally suggest someone for an official position

Mr Leesom proposed Mrs Banks for the position of Treasurer

to suggest an idea, method etc as an answer to a scientific question

A number of theories have been proposed to explain the phenomenon.

to intend to do smth.

How does he propose to deal with the situation?

to ask someone to marry you, especially in a formal way

Shaun proposed to me only six months after we met.

to formally ask people at a social event to join you in wishing someone success, happiness, etc as they raise a glass of wine

I'd like to propose a toast to the bride and groom.

Complete the sentences with the appropriate word.

1. I _____ we take a break and finish this later.
2. It was a sunny afternoon, and Jim _____ a trip to the beach.
3. Einstein _____ his theory of general relativity in 1915.
4. Police are _____ a reward for information about the shooting.
5. The shelter _____ some protection from the icy winds.
6. Current data _____ that there could be life on Mars.
7. We _____ several dates for the next meeting, but they were all rejected.
8. At the last meeting, Mrs. Williams was _____ by several members.
9. The new administration has _____ scrapping more than 400 obsolete government programs.
10. Can you _____ someone for the job?
11. We'll have to wait and see what kind of solutions they _____ to us.
12. The Centre _____ a wide range of sports facilities.
13. He _____ to lend him some money, but he said no.
14. The therapist _____ how Tony could cope with his problems.
15. I _____ a toast: to success.

16. The door had not been forced open, which strongly _____ that the victim was known to her killer.

17. Can you _____ where we might be able to get a decent meal?

18. Unfortunately, they _____ the contract to someone else.

19. What do you _____ to do about it?

20. He _____ no explanation for his actions.

21. She was the kind of teacher who was always ready to _____ advice and encouragement.

22. In fact, the situation is far worse than these figures _____.

23. She _____ a possible solution to the mystery.

24. Smaller hotels often _____ greater comfort at lower prices.

25. As its name _____, the Carlton Beach Hotel is situated near the sea.

▪ T U R N ▪

1. turn down – to reduce volume, amount of light, heat, etc.

Can you turn the TV down? I'm trying to work.

She turned down the sound on the TV set but left the picture on the screen.

to refuse an offer, request, or invitation

I'm not going to turn down an invitation to go to New York!

They were disappointed when the Council turned down the plans for a larger school.

2. turn in – to give something to a person in authority

My wallet was turned in to the police two days later.

Police are worried about the number of people illegal weapons and they are encouraging them to turn them in at their local police station.

to give a piece of work you have done to a teacher, employer etc.

Have you all turned in your homework assignments?

to become different, or to make someone or something do this

What used to be a quiet village has gradually turned into a busy holiday resort.

In a flash, the prince turned into a frog.

3. turn off – to make a machine, etc stop operating

Can you turn off the lights? The switch is by the door.

4. turn on – to make a machine, etc start operating

I forgot to turn on the answer machine when I left the house this morning.

I don't understand this machine. How do you turn it on?

5. turn out – to happen in a particular way, or to have a particular result

It was a difficult time, but eventually things turned out all right.

To my surprise, it turned out that I was wrong.

to produce or make something

The factory turns out hundreds of small appliances every day.

6. turn to – to go to smb. for help, advice, or sympathy

The Namibian government turned to South Africa for help.

to start to do or use smth. new, esp. as a way of solving a problem

Many people here are turning to solar power.

to look at a particular page in a book

Turn to page 655 for more information.

7. turn up – to increase volume, heat, light, etc.

It's very cold in here. Do you mind if I turn up the heating a bit?

to arrive at a place, especially in a way that is unexpected

Although Mark said he would be there at 8.00, he didn't turn up until 10.30.

The taxi didn't turn up so we had to walk.

to suddenly appear after having been lost or searched for

Don't worry. I'm sure a job will turn up soon.

We can't have lost those papers. They'll probably turn up in the wrong file or something like that.

Complete the sentences with the appropriate particles.

1. The government is refusing to turn__the documents to the UN inspection team.
2. You ought to turn _____ the heat before the sauce burns.
3. As it turned _____, he passed the exam quite easily.
4. How can you read in this light"? Let me turn _____ the big light for you.
5. The rebels were told to turn _____ their weapons and ammunition.
6. Jake turned _____ his computer and checked his mail.

7. Don't worry about the necklace. It'll turn _____ sooner or later.
8. Their proposals have been turned _____ because they will cost too much.
9. Could you please turn _____ the volume a bit? I can't hear it well.
10. I've got a problem and I don't know who to turn _____ for help.
11. Only five people came to the meeting and most of them turned _____ late.
12. Hollywood discovered her and turned her _____ a star.
13. Don't forget to turn the lights _____ when you leave.
14. That guy turned _____ to be Maria's second cousin.
15. Eventually my watch turned _____ in a coat pocket.
16. If the music is too loud for you why didn't you ask me to turn it _____?
17. If Tina turns _____, tell her we waited as long as we could.
18. Those missing keys haven't turned _____ yet.
19. The witch had turned them all _____ stone.
20. When her business failed she turned _____ her parents for financial help.

E. REVISION

VOCABULARY

1. Choose the word that best completes each sentence.

1. Some writers have a(an) _____ for long, unusual words.
 A. amalgam B. contention C. affinity D. exception
2. Kavner _____ defeat after 75% of the vote had been counted.
 A. exceeded B. relegated C. stated D. conceded
3. For years this was thought to be a _____ Van Gogh, but in fact it's a fake.
 A. genuine B. eminent C. drastic D. placid
4. Attempts to swim across the stormy channel were _____ .
 A. immense B. incongruous C. futile D. perceptible
5. She performed very _____ at the exam.
 A. barely B. obviously C. creditably D. ultimately

6. _____ in the region has grown due to recent bombings.
A. Dilemma B. Obsession C. Premise D. Tension
7. The order _____ him to appear as a witness.
A. conceded B. dispelled C. compelled D. rejected
8. Management must take _____ responsibility for the late delivery.
A. successive B. ultimate C. precious D. eminent
9. Several children have measles and the others are bound to _____ .
A. dispel B. succumb C. tantalize D. require
10. This restaurant is popular with people who _____ good service and fine wines.
A. trespass B. appreciate C. estimate D. gauge
11. Let's _____ until tomorrow.
A. adjourn B. detach C. _____ D. dangle
12. The proposal was firmly _____.
A. effected B. rejected C. required D. veiled
13. Sending goods by road _____ greater speed and flexibility.
A. suggests B. proposes C. offers D. estimates
14. People working to aid the hungry often complain about the _____ waste by restaurants and supermarkets, which throw out enormous quantities of perfectly good food.
A. futile B. barren C. successive D. wanton
15. We hope to _____ the belief that scientists work in isolation in windowless rooms.
A. disentangle B. concede C. dispel D. succumb
16. The company's application to build a leisure complex has been _____ by city hall.
A. sacred B. granted C. squeezed D. restrained
17. The changes to the production process will not affect the _____ product.
A. final B. closing C. last D. latter
18. The new credit cards will be of great _____ to our customers.
A. benefit B. pursuit C. miracle D. dilemma
19. The _____ way of reducing pollution is to use cars less.

- A. placid B. impenetrable C. obvious D. complacent
20. The university should _____ more facilities for disabled students.
A. present B. produce C. project D. provide
21. The police _____ the crowd at 10,000
A. evaluated B. appreciated C. estimated D. gauged
22. Regulations _____ that students attend at least 90% of the lectures.
A. permit B. require C. relegate D. reject
23. He spread his hands to _____ the size of the fish.
A. suggest B. propose C. offer D. detach
24. Recent polls have gauged the president's support at 85% or more.
A. appreciated B. evaluated C. gauged D. assessed
25. 60 million years ago, the whole area was a(n) _____ desert.
A. successive B. immense C. ultimate D. futile
26. Construction costs for the bridge could _____ \$230 million.
A. concede B. effect C. trespass D. exceed
27. Our team were _____ to a minor league.
A. stated B. detached C. relegated D. dispelled
28. Julia's desire to stay slim has become a(n) _____.
A. tension B. contention C. atrocity D. obsession
29. _____ changes are needed if environmental catastrophe is to be avoided.
A. Precious B. Placid C. Eminent D. Drastic
30. I believe his whole argument is based on a false _____.
A. premise B. dilemma C. benefit D. exception

2. Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

genuine	rejected	concede	adjourned	immense
dubious	exceeds	ultimate	futile	complacent
formidable	wanton	affinity	premise	succumbed

1. The plane detoured in a _____ attempt to avoid bad weather.
2. A handwriting expert has been called in to check if the signature is _____.
3. First they said no, but eventually they _____.
4. Many people have a(n) _____ for dolphins.
5. He had been involved in some _____ activities during the war
6. Holyfield had to _____ in the ninth round due to a head injury.
7. Nuclear weapons are the _____ deterrent.
8. The company has built up a _____ reputation for quality.
9. The case was _____ until Monday.
10. After the transplant her body _____ the new heart
11. The program is based on the _____ that drug addiction can be cured.
12. _____ violence is terrifying because we can see no sense in it and therefore cannot think how to prevent or avoid it.
13. The nation cannot become _____ about the quality of our schools.
14. Regular visits from a social worker can be of _____ value to old people living alone.
15. Nearly 100 cities have air pollution that _____ federal standards.

3. Complete each sentence with a word from the box.

benefit	litigation	vital	obsession	provides
last	obvious	evaluate	appreciate	offered
successive	detach	require	exception	trespassing

1. All the bad weather here makes me _____ home.
2. We want him to get maximum _____ from the course.
3. There was no _____ reason for their behavior.
4. The kidneys play a _____ role in removing waste from the blood.
5. The law applies to all EU countries; Britain is no _____.
6. _____ governments have tried to deal with this issue.

7. The hotel _____ a shoe-cleaning service for guests.
8. _____ costs will run you into a fortune
9. Campbell's broken leg will probably _____ surgery.
10. They _____ her the job but she turned it down.
11. The _____ page contains all of the answers.
12. There was not enough time to _____ the information before the meeting.
13. Get out of the yard! Can't you see the sign? It says "No _____."
14. Please _____ and fill out the application form.
15. The current _____ with exam results is actually harming children's education.

4. Choose the word closest in meaning to a boldfaced word.

- | | | | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------|----------------|--------------|------------------|
| 1. pursuit | A. CHASE | B. deviation | C. passion | D. strife |
| 2. estimate | A. ADMIT | B. judge | C. banish | D. suspend |
| 3. detach | A. ELIMINATE | B. disentangle | C. entail | D. obligate |
| 4. dilemma | A. STRAIN | B. proof | C. fix | D. suspense |
| 5. concoction | A.
IRREGULARITY | B. supposition | C. affection | D. combination |
| 6. gauge | A. VALUE | B. assess | C. screen | D. surpass |
| 7. futile | A. DISTINCT | B. vain | C. sequent | D. evident |
| 8. exceed | A. EXCEL | B. tempt | C. suspend | D. rate |
| 9. affinity | A. INFATUATION | B. blend | C. prophecy | D. compatibility |
| 10. benefit | A. ASSET | B. alloy | C. complex | D. project |
| 11. concede | A. OUTDO | B. accept | C. dismiss | D. execute |
| 12. ultimate | A.
DISCERNABLE | B. dense | C. utmost | D. unavailing |
| 13. successive | A. SUPERFICIAL | B. disparate | C. extreme | D. consecutive |
| 14. adjourn | A. COMPLETE | B. surmount | C. defer | D. achieve |
| 15. premise | A. ASSUMPTION | B. quandary | C. invasion | D. quest |
| 16. complacent | A. APPARENT | B. tranquil | C. contended | D. dire |

- | | | | | |
|--------------------|--------------|----------------|-------------|-------------|
| 17. compel | A. DRIVE | B. create | C. shield | D. conceal |
| 18. effect | A. YIELD | B. force | C. demand | D. fulfill |
| 19. drastic | A. DESERVING | B. conspicuous | C. harsh | D. terminal |
| 20. dispel | A. IMPEL | B. banish | C. motivate | D. involve |

5. Choose the word opposite in meaning to a boldfaced word.

- | | | | | |
|--------------------|------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1. ultimate | A. final | B. first | C. infinite | D. evident |
| 2. tension | A. relaxation | B. fusion | C. suspense | D. problem |
| 3. barren | A. vast | B. devoid | C. fertile | D. disparate |
| 4. futile | A. ineffective | B. successful | C. terminal | D. impassable |
| 5. adjourn | A. begin | B. surpass | C. cancel | D. surpass |
| 6. compel | A. surmount | B. brandish | C. restrain | D. encroach |
| 7. immense | A. apparent | B. vain | C. bare | D. small |
| 8. benefit | A. disadvantage | B. quest | C. assistance | D. alloy |
| 9. placid | A. serene | B. apparent | C. gratified | D. turbulent |
| 10. obvious | A. imperceptible | B. distinct | C. celebrated | D. extreme |
| 11. eminent | A. inconspicuous | B. malicious | C. notable | D. decisive |
| 12. reject | A. dispatch | B. accept | C. dismiss | D. separate |

PHRASAL VERBS

6. Complete the sentences with the appropriate phrasal verbs.

- We thought we'd _____ _____ James on the way home.
- Six major business segments _____ _____ the fast-food market within the food-service industry.
- Don't be _____ _____ how it looks – it tastes delicious
- After escaping from prison the convict _____ _____ the hills.
- People from out of state are coming in and _____ _____ real estate.
- Lila _____ _____ again, answering before he could even open his mouth.
- Someone had _____ _____ the lock on my door.

8. The club will _____ its plans for a new stadium in the summer.
9. The White House hopes to _____ these problems soon.
10. I was prepared to _____ her story because I knew it was the truth.
11. Instead of being given a ticket, the driver _____ a warning.
12. Does everyone know what to do if a fire _____?
13. They wanted to _____ that basement room _____ a wine cellar.
14. The weather was so bad that we were told that the trip _____.
15. With luck, you might cover your costs, but don't _____ it.

IDIOMS

7. Complete the sentences with the appropriate idioms.

1. The green dress _____ with her red hair.
2. My teacher and I _____, but now we are good friends.
3. We bought an old barn and _____ in rebuilding it.
4. Opponents are looking for _____.
5. The teacher _____ about homework every afternoon.
6. His silence on the issue _____.
7. That's him over there. I'd _____ on it.
8. The whole process will take half an hour _____.
9. Two parties agreed to _____.
10. The Christmas holidays can really _____ what it means to be out of work.

8. Complete the sentences with the appropriate idioms.

1. He always likes to have _____ in any argument.
2. Changes in top management of the company have been _____ for weeks.
3. She was completely unaware of _____ he had _____ for her with his questions.
4. Don't _____. You know what I'm getting at.
5. I'd like to _____ – she thinks she is so special.
6. They began to offer takeout food and other restaurants _____.

7. Tuition in our university is _____ the state budget.
8. His expressionless face _____ to what he was thinking.
9. In the past 20 years, information technology has _____.
10. The business is doing very well. You can _____.

9. Complete the sentences with the appropriate words.

1. If it rains every day while you're on vacation, but you have to make _____.
2. The police make _____ Doppler effect to measure the speed of vehicles.
3. There's nothing wrong with your hair. Stop making an _____ it.
4. I went back into the house to make _____ the stove was turned off.
5. I just wanted to make _____ that you know where to go.
6. Children should be taught to make _____ of the various information services.
7. It makes _____ to keep such information on file for reference.
8. I waited until everybody was sitting quietly before _____.

II GRAMMAR FOCUS

1. Write the negative prefixes *in-*, *im-*, *un*

_____comprehensible	_____certain	_____mobile	_____polite
_____familiar	_____capable	_____competent	_____clear
_____direct	_____locked	_____concerned	_____aware
_____numerable	_____patient	_____decisive	_____complete
_____precise	_____formal	_____prepared	_____expected

2. Complete the sentences with the words from Exercise 1

1. She is very _____, always rushing things.
2. John had tried six solicitors, but they all seemed hopelessly _____.
3. His French accent is so strong that I find his English _____.

4. People who invest money are often _____ of the risks involved.
5. She was so surprised by the question that for a minute she was _____ of answering.
6. It would be _____ to leave the party so early.
7. An _____ commander is unlikely to win the confidence of men.
8. The changes will have only a(n) _____ effect on us.
9. The cause of the accident is _____.
10. She has received _____ get-well cards and flowers.
11. Historical records for this time are _____.
12. Ella dreaded being _____ and dependent on other people.
13. A lot of large companies remain _____ about the environment.
14. The _____ meetings at Camp David were important in strengthening mutual understanding and trust.
15. The voice on the phone sounded _____.
16. If the instructions are _____, you can't blame people for making mistakes.
17. I think I can manage to find the hotel, but the directions are very _____.
18. Allow a couple of extra hours' journey for any _____ delays.
19. She _____ the safe and took out a large wad of banknotes.
20. The company was totally _____ for the scale of the disaster.

3. Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions

1. There are some exceptions _____ every grammatical rule.
2. A new engine would cost _____ most two thousand dollars.
3. Her parents arrived _____ the USA in 1926.
4. We haven't discussed the matter _____ detail yet.
5. I didn't do it _____ purpose. It was a complete accident.
6. At the moment only one runaway is _____ use and there will be long delays for passengers flying in Europe.
7. The books offer some good advice _____ how to cope with stress at work.
8. The rescue was carried out _____ extremely difficult conditions.

9. _____ the surface life seemed perfectly normal in Belfast.
10. All major obstacles _____ peace have now been removed.
11. I try to avoid arguments _____ the money
12. Four police officers suddenly arrived _____ their house.
13. "I can't wait!" Tim said _____ an excited voice.
14. There was a sense of excitement _____ the air.
15. From a very early age he had a passion _____ fast cars.

4. Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions.

1. The bank wrote to apologize _____ overcharging me.
2. Nearly all nuts are rich _____ protein.
3. She often substitutes _____ absent teachers in their Spanish classes.
4. Ask _____ our free 40 page brochure at any branch of the store.
5. We are aware _____ the problem and we are trying to do something about it.
6. Our team was relegated _____ a minor league.
7. Amundsen used huskies, dogs eminently suited _____ work in Arctic conditions.
8. She was jealous _____ the success of his new book.
9. He retired _____ baseball after the 51 season.
10. A hydroelectric power station is capable _____ generating enough energy for the region.
11. Are you familiar _____ type of machine?
12. Who did you vote _____ in the last election?
13. That reminds me _____ a joke I heard last week.
14. Admission to the university depends solely _____ a student's performance.
15. His disappointment was obvious _____ everyone.

5. Complete the sentences with infinitives or gerunds.

1. I was eager _____ (get back) to work as soon as possible.
2. Firms that fail _____ (take) advantage of the new technology will go out of business.

3. I don't recall _____ (see) any cars parked outside.
4. The company expects _____ (complete) work in April.
5. He arranged for Andi _____ (leave) on the next flight home.
6. I've been meaning _____ (ask) you if you want to come for a meal next week.
7. I've always wanted _____ (be able) to speak Japanese.
8. My new job will mean _____ (travel) all over the world.
9. How do they propose _____ (pay) for this?
10. I always thought my sister would be the first _____ (get) married.
11. I can't remember how _____ (get) there.
12. Did you mind _____ (being) away from home for so long?
13. We still don't know how the company proposes _____ (raise) the money.
14. I tried _____ (get) another job but I had no luck.
15. Joan suggested _____ (ask) her father for his opinion.
16. We've saved enough money _____ (buy) a computer.
17. Don't hesitate _____ (contact) me if you need any more information
18. I think you should try _____ (plan) your essays in rough before you start writing.
19. Have you arranged _____ (meet) Mark this weekend?
20. The temperature was well below zero - much too cold _____ (spend) more than a few minutes on deck.
21. Richard Maldonado admitted _____ (accept) bribes.
22. I offered _____ (help) her with the dishes.
23. She hopes _____ (win) the gold medal.
24. Did I mention I _____ (see) Lee and John yesterday?
25. I have a feeling I forgot _____ (turn) off the cooker before we left.
26. I'll never forget _____ (arrive) in Washington the first time.
27. Nancy remembers _____ (see) her keys on the floor yesterday.
28. Remember _____ (call) me when you arrive
29. I offered _____ (help) him but he turned me down.
30. We were the last ones _____ (leave) the party.

6. Complete the sentences using the correct forms of say or tell.

1. On the news they _____ that there had been a big earthquake in Indonesia.
2. At that time I had a contract that _____ I was entitled to just one week's holiday.
3. I want you to _____ me all the details.
4. When in doubt it's best to _____ nothing.
5. The gauge _____ you how much fuel you have left.
6. 'What do you want it for?' 'I'd rather not _____.'
7. The doctor _____ Linda that she had to follow the diet.
8. Although he didn't _____ so, it was clear that he was in pain.
9. It's fairly easy to _____ the difference between good coffee and bad coffee.
10. Most modern art doesn't _____ much to me.
11. I _____ to the assistant that I wanted size 8.
12. Tina got in trouble for _____ lies.

7. Rewrite the sentences using the verbs in the box.

warn	claim	estimate	explain	wanted to know
wondered	agree	forbid	permit	refuse
insist	propose	accuse	allow	threaten

1. "It will cost \$1000 to repair the damage," (estimate)

2. "If you don't give me a raise, I'll resign,"

3. "Stay away from me," He said (warn)

4. "The theatre will be built next to the town hall" (propose)

5. "The money should be available to all students in financial difficulties"

6. "I remember exactly what the gunman looked like,"

7. "Your ear problem is related to your sinuses,"

8. "OK, we'll meet again next Monday"

9. "Does he speak French fluently?" (wonder)

10. "You broke the vase"

11. "You can use my phone,"

12. "No, I won't come with you,"

13. "What time shall we leave?"

14. "You mustn't eat sweets,"

15. "You may speak now,"

8. Rewrite the following commands, requests, offers, suggestions, advice, invitations in Reported speech

1. "Insert your card and wait for the machine to open,"

2. "Would you like me to check the brakes?"

3. "If I were you I'd go and put the money in the bank before you spend it,"

4. Shall we look around the city?"

5. "Why don't you sign up for the competition," she said

6. "Shall I carry your suitcase?" he said

7. "Please, put it away," he said

8. "Would you like to go to the theater?"

9. "Don't fire except in self-defense"

10. "We need a break. Let's go to Paris for weekend."

11. "Would you like to come to my house?"

12. "Could you babysit for me tonight?" she said

13. "Would you like me to do the washing up?"

14. "Let me help you with those bags,"

15. "What about going out for lunch one day next week?"

9. Join the ideas, using the correct words/phrases in brackets

1. They need to raise \$5 million. They want to pay for the repairs. (in order to/so)

2. Cotton production was on the increase. It was still a small industry compared to hemp and canvas production. (Besides / However)

3. Progress so far has been very good. We are, therefore, confident that the work will be completed on time. (because/therefore)

4. Sales of existing homes went up 2% last month. Construction of new homes rose as well. (Then / Similarly)

5. It rained a lot when we went camping. We had a great time. (So / Still)

6. To maintain good health, it is important to eat a balanced diet. Physical exercise is essential. (Besides / However)

7. We must change the law. We need to improve its effectiveness. (so as to / likewise)

8. A new security system was installed. Extra guards were hired. (In addition / As a result)

9. I bought a magazine. I was waiting for the train. (while / after a while)

10. The old system was fairly complicated. The new system is really very simple. (whereas / also)

11. They put up notices. They wanted to prevent people from walking on the grass. (so that / while)

12. Seldain is not considered a safe drug any more. Claritin is still considered a very safe drug. (Nevertheless / In contrast.)

13. The source of the information is irrelevant. The information need not be confidential. (Moreover / On the other hand)

14. I decided to go with them. I had nothing better to do. (so that / because)

15. The molecules are absorbed into the bloodstream. They affect the organs.
(consequently / whereas)

16. We have good reason to feel pleased with our progress. We mustn't get
complacent. (Furthermore / Nevertheless)

17. She had a bad cold. She was able to sing in the choir. (Despite /As)

18. Her eyelids began to droop. She was fast asleep. (Before that / Before long)

III. AFTER READING THOUGHTS

A. UNDERSTANDING THE STORY

Part 1

1. What relation was the author to Hugh?
2. What does Hugh look like?
3. Where did Elizabeth and Hugh meet?
4. What is Hugh's estate called?

Part 2

1. Where were the author, Elizabeth and Hugh having a rest?
2. Who chased frightened sheep around the lawn?
3. Who was Raymond?
4. Where was he from?
5. What word gave the author a clue to Raymond's profession?

Part 3

1. What project did Raymond have in mind?
2. How did Hugh try to prevent Raymond from going ahead with his plan?
3. What instructions did he give to one of his stable hands?
4. What was Elizabeth's plan?
5. Who was Elizabeth going to invite?

Part 4

1. How did Raymond and the doctor get along?
2. What did they discuss at dinner table?
3. What was in Raymond's opinion the vital instrument for escape artists?
4. What trick did Raymond show?
5. How did he prepare for the trick?

Part 5

1. Where did Hugh take his guests?
2. How big was the chamber?
3. What was the chamber used for?
4. What made the chamber difficult for people to survive in?
5. What prevented servants from opening the door?
6. How long did Raymond claim it would take him to open the door?
7. What were the terms of the bet?
8. How long was Raymond able to last?

B. READING BETWEEN THE LINES

Part 1

1. What was Hugh's attitude to his estate?
2. What is Hugh like?

3. Why do you think Elizabeth ‘came along like a pup at **his** heels’?

Part 2

1. What was Raymond famous for?
2. Why did Raymond resign?
3. Why do you think Raymond was keen on the idea of buying Dane estate?
4. Do you think Raymond and Hugh got on well?
5. Why do you think they saw each other occasionally?

Part 3

1. Why do you think Raymond wanted to make drastic changes?
2. What was Hugh’s attitude to Raymond’s project?
3. Why did Raymond threaten to haul Hugh off to court?
4. Why was Elizabeth worried?
5. Do you think the author approved her plan?

Part 4

1. How does the knowledge of human nature help Raymond do his tricks?
2. How did the statement of false premise work in the trick with the door?
3. Why do you think Hugh said he found the trick disappointing?
4. What were fatal flaws in Elizabeth’s plan?

Part 5

1. What was the reason according to Raymond why people succumbed in the chamber?
2. What bet did Hugh offer?
3. Why do you think Raymond agreed to the terms of the bet?
4. Why do you think Hugh didn’t let the doctor open the door of the chamber?
5. Do you think he will open the door?

D. SHARING IDEAS

1. Give examples from the story which show that Hugh was self-assured.
2. Discuss Hugh's and Raymond's attitude to Dane house.
3. Do you think that a false premise is an effective tool in making people does what you want?

E. WRITING

1. Compare and contrast Hugh and Raymond in character and behavior.
2. Pretend to be Raymond. Write a short paragraph describing the project of renovating Dane House.
3. Write a paragraph describing how Hugh reacted to the news of Raymond's project.
4. Pretend to be Elizabeth. Write a letter to the author describing events which followed after Raymond outlined his project to Hugh.
5. Write a short paragraph describing the events which took place at the dinner.
6. Write a short paragraph describing the events in Part 5.

RETELLING A STORY

1. INTRODUCTION

The story is about...

The story deals with...

The story describes...

The story tells us about...

2. MAIN BODY

Argumentative Linking Devices

Addition

Moreover

Besides

In addition

Furthermore

Also

Both ... and...

Not only ... but also ...

Similarity

Similarly

Similar to...

Likewise

Alike

Contrast

Unlike

... while ...

In contrast (to)

Whereas

Cause

Because (of)

Concession

Nevertheless

Nonetheless

However

Although

Even though

Despite / In spite of

As

Since

The reason for

Effect

That's why

So

As a result

As a consequence

Narration Techniques

Past Progressive

while / as

Past Simple

when / as soon as / the moment / the instant

next / then / later / 5 minutes later / after a while / afterwards /

following this / before long / shortly after

Past Perfect

before that / up until then / until that time / by that time

by the time I noticed / discovered / found out / realized / understood that

Noun clauses

Something that annoys me is people who / doing... .

One thing that annoys me about is when / why / how... .

People who / doing is something I can't understand.

The thing I can't understand (about)..... is why..... .

Why is something I can't understand.

Why is a mystery to me.

Modals + Perfect Infinitive

Certainty: must / might / may / can't / couldn't

Criticism: should

Words and expressions to use

- ✓ suddenly / all of a sudden / out of the blue / out of nowhere
- ✓ strange / odd / queer / weird / peculiar
- ✓ enormous / vast / gigantic / tremendous
- ✓ as if / as though
- ✓ so ...that / such... that
- ✓ boring, bored
- ✓ too / enough
- ✓ luckily, it was lucky / (un)fortunately / surprisingly / oddly enough

3. CONCLUSION

Eventually

Finally

In the end

APPENDIX# 2

The Story of an Hour

Kate Chopin

Knowing that Mrs. Mallard was afflicted with a heart trouble, great care was taken to break to her as gently as possible the news of her husband's death.

It was her sister Josephine who told her, in broken sentences; veiled hints that revealed in half concealing. Her husband's friend Richards was there, too, near her. It was he who had been in the newspaper office when intelligence of the railroad disaster was received, with Brently Mallard's name leading the list of "killed". He had only taken the time to assure himself of its truth by a second telegram, and had hastened to forestall any less careful, less tender friend in bearing the sad message.

She did not hear the story as many women have heard the same, with a paralyzed inability to accept its significance. She wept at once, with sudden, wild abandonment, in her sister's arms. When the storm of grief had spent itself she went away to her room alone. She would have no one follow her.

There stood, facing the open window, a comfortable, roomy armchair. Into this she sank, pressed down by a physical exhaustion that haunted her body and seemed to reach into her soul.

She could see in the open square before her house the tops of trees that were all aquiver with the new spring life. The delicious breath of rain was in the air. In the street below a peddler was crying his wares. The notes of a distant song, which someone was singing reached her faintly, and countless sparrows were twittering in the eaves.

There were patches of blue sky showing here and there through the clouds that had met and piled one above the other in the west facing her window.

She sat until her head thrown back upon the cushion of the chair, quite motionless, except when a sob came up into her throat and shook her, as a child who has cried itself to sleep continues to sob in its dreams.

She was young, with a fair, calm face, whose lines bespoke repression and even a certain strength. But now there was a dull stare in her eyes, whose gaze was fixed away off yonder on one of those patches of blue sky. It was not a glance of reflection, but rather indicated a suspension of intelligent thought.

There was something coming to her and she was waiting for it, fearfully. What was it? She did not know; it was too subtle and elusive to name. But she felt it, creeping out of the sky, reaching toward her through the sounds, the scents, the color that filled the air.

Now her bosom rose and fell tumultuously. She was beginning to recognize this thing that was approaching to possess her, and she was striving to beat it back with her will – as powerless as her two white slender hands would have been.

When she abandoned herself a little whispered word escaped her slightly parted lips. She said it over and over under her breath: “free, free, free!” The vacant stare and the look of terror that had followed it went from her eyes. They stayed keen and bright. Her pulses beat fast, and the coursing blood warmed and relaxed every inch of her body.

She did not stop to ask if it were or were not a monstrous joy that held her. A clear and exalted perception enabled her to dismiss the suggestion as trivial.

She knew that she would weep again when she saw the kind, tender hands folded in death; the face that had never looked save with love upon her, fixed and gray and dead. But she saw beyond that bitter moment a long procession of years to come that would belong to her absolutely. And she opened and spread her arms out to them in welcome.

There would be no one to live for her during those coming years; she would live for herself. There would be no powerful will bending hers in that blind

persistence with which men and women believe they have a right to impose a private will upon a fellow-creature. A kind intention or a cruel intention made the act seem no less a crime as she looked upon it in that brief moment of illumination.

And yet she had loved him – sometimes. Often she had not. What did it matter! What could love, the unsolved mystery count for in face of this possession of self-assertion which she suddenly recognized as the strongest impulse of her being!

“Free! Body and soul free!” she kept whispering.

Josephine was kneeling before the closed door with her lips to the keyhole imploring for admission. “Louise, open the door! I beg; open the door – you will make yourself ill. What are you doing, Louise? For heaven's sake open the door.”

“Go away I am not making myself ill.” No; she was drinking in a very elixir of life through that open window.

Her fancy was running not along those days ahead of her. Spring days, and summer days, and all sorts of days that would be her own. She breathed a quick prayer that life might be long. It was only yesterday she had thought with a shudder that life might be long.

She arose at length and opened the door to her sister's importunities. There was, a feverish triumph in her eyes and she earned herself unwittingly like a goddess of Victory. She clasped her sister's waist, and together they descended the stairs. Richards stood waiting for them at the bottom.

Some one was opening the front door with a latchkey. It was Brently Mallard who entered, a little travel-stained, composedly carrying his grip-sack and umbrella. He had been far from the scene of accident, and did not even know there had been one. He stood amazed at Josephine's piercing cry; at Richards' quick motion to screen him from the view of his wife.

But Richards was too late.

When the doctors came they said she had died of heart disease – of joy that kills.

Paul's case

Willa Cather

It was Paul's afternoon to appear before the faculty of the Pittsburgh High School to account for his various misdemeanors. He had been suspended a week ago, and his father had called at the Principal's office and confessed his perplexity about his son. Paul entered the faculty room suave and smiling.

When questioned by the Principal as to why he was there Paul stated, politely enough, that he wanted to come back to school. This was a lie, but Paul was quite accustomed to lying; found it, indeed, indispensable for overcoming friction. His teachers were asked to state their respective charges against him, which they did with such a rancor and aggrievedness as evinced that this was not a usual case. Disorder and impertinence were among the offenses named, yet each of his instructors felt that it was scarcely possible to put into words the real cause of the trouble, which lay in a sort of hysterically defiant manner of the boy's; in the contempt which they all knew he felt for them, and which he seemingly made not the least effort to conceal. Once, when he had been making a synopsis of a paragraph at the blackboard his English teacher had stepped to his side and attempted to guide his hand. Paul had started back with a shudder and thrust his hands violently behind him. The astonished woman could scarcely have been more hurt and embarrassed had he struck at her. The insult was so involuntary and definitely personal as to be unforgettable. In one way and another he had made all his teachers, men and women alike, conscious of the same feeling of physical aversion. In one class he habitually sat with his hand shading his eyes; in another he always looked out of the window during the recitation; in another he made a running commentary on the lecture with humorous intention.

His teachers felt this afternoon that his whole attitude was symbolized by his shrug and his flippantly red carnation flower, and they fell upon him without mercy, his English teacher leading the pack. He stood through it smiling, his pale lips parted over his white teeth. (His lips were continually twitching, and he had a

habit of raising his eyebrows that was contemptuous and irritating to the last degree.) Older boys than Paul had broken down and shed tears under that baptism of fire, but his set smile did not once desert him, and his only sign of discomfort was the nervous trembling of the fingers that toyed with the buttons of his overcoat, and an occasional jerking of the other hand that held his hat. Paul was always smiling, always glancing about him, seeming to feel that people might be watching him and trying to detect something. This conscious expression, since it was as far as possible from boyish mirthfulness was usually attributed to insolence or “smartness.”

As the inquisition proceeded one of his instructors repeated an impertinent remark of the boy's, and the Principal asked him whether he thought that a courteous speech to have made a woman. Paul shrugged his shoulders slightly and his eyebrows twitched.

“I don't know,” he replied “I didn't mean to be polite or impolite, either. I guess it's a sort of way I have of saying things regardless.”

The Principal, who was a sympathetic man, asked him whether he didn't think that a way it would be well to get rid of. Paul grinned and said he guessed so. When he was told that he could go he bowed gracefully and went out. His bow was but a repetition of the scandalous red carnation.

As for Paul, he ran down the hill whistling the “Soldiers' Chorus” from Faust, looking wildly behind him now and then to see whether some of his teachers were not there to writhe under his lightheartedness. As it was now late in the afternoon and Paul was on duty that evening as usher at Carnegie Hall, he decided that he would not go home to super.

When Paul reached the ushers' dressing room half a dozen boys were there already, and he began excitedly to tumble into his uniform.

Somewhat calmed by his suppression, Paul dashed out to the front of the house to seat the early comers. He was a model usher; gracious and smiling he ran up and down the aisles; nothing was too much trouble for him; he carried massagers and brought programs as though it were his greatest pleasure in life, and

all the people in his section thought him a charming boy, feeling that he remembered and admired them.

After a concert was over Paul was always irritable and wretched until he got to sleep, and tonight he was even more than usually restless. He had the feeling of not being able to let down, of its being impossible to give up this delicious excitement which was the only thing that could be called living at all. During the last number he withdrew and, after hastily changing his clothes in the dressing room, slipped out to the side door where the soprano's carriage stood. Here he began pacing rapidly up and down the walk, waiting to see her come out.

Half an hour later Paul alighted from his car and went slowly down one of the side streets off the main thoroughfare. His home was next to the house of the Cumberland minister. He approached it tonight with the nerveless sense of defeat, the hopeless feeling of sinking back forever into ugliness and commonness that he had always had when he came home. The moment he turned into Cordelia Street he felt the waters close above his head. After each of these orgies of living he experienced all the physical depressions which follows a debauch; the loathing of respectable beds, of common food, of a house penetrated by kitchen odors; a shuddering repulsion for the flavorless, colorless mass of everyday existence; a morbid desire for cool things and soft lights and fresh flowers.

The he approached the house, the more absolutely unequal Paul felt to the sight of it all: his ugly sleeping chamber; the cold bathroom with the grimy zinc tub, the cracked mirror, the dripping spigots; his father, at the top of the stairs, his hairy legs sticking out from his nightshirt, his feet thrust into carpet slippers. He was so much later than usual that there would certainly be inquiries and reproaches. Paul stopped short before the door. He felt he could not toss again on that miserable bed. He would not go in. He would tell his father that he had no carfare and it was raining so hard he had gone home with one of the boys and stayed all night.

It was at the theater and at Carnegie Hall that Paul really lived; the rest was but a sleep and a forgetting.

Perhaps it was because in Paul's world the natural nearly always wore the guise of ugliness, that a certain element of artificiality seemed to him necessary in beauty. Perhaps it was because his experience of life elsewhere was so full of Sabbath-school picnics, petty economies, wholesome advice as to how to succeed in life, and the inescapable odors of cooking, that he found this existence so alluring, these smartly clad men and women so attractive, that he was so moved by these starry apple orchards that bloomed perennially under the limelight.

After a night behind the scenes Paul found the schoolroom more than ever repulsive; the bare floors and naked walls; the prosy men who never wore frock coats or violets in their buttonholes; the women with their dull gowns, shrill voices and pitiful seriousness about prepositions that govern the dative. He could not bear to have the other pupils think, for a moment, that he took these people seriously; he must convey to them that he considered it all trivial, and was there only by way of a jest, anyway.

Matters went steadily worse with Paul at school. In the itch to let his instructors know how heartily he despised them and their homilies, and how thoroughly he was appreciated elsewhere, he mentioned once or twice that he had no time to fool with theorems adding – with a twitch of the eyebrows and a touch of that nervous bravado which so perplexed them – that he was helping the people down at the stock company; they were old friends of his.

The upshot of the matter was that the Principal went to Paul's father, and Paul was taken out of school and put to work. The manager at Carnegie Hall was told to get another usher in his stead; the doorkeeper at the theater was warned not to admit him to the house; and Charley Edwards remorsefully promised the boy's father not to see him again.

Yesterday afternoon that he had been sent to the bank with Denny & Carson's deposit, as usual – but this time he was instructed to leave the book to be balanced. There was above two thousand dollars in checks, and nearly a thousand in the bank notes which he had taken from the book and quietly transferred to his pocket. At the bank he had made out a new deposit slip. His nerves had been steady enough to

permit of his returning to the office, where he had finished his work and asked for a full days holiday tomorrow, Saturday, giving a perfectly reasonable pretext. The bankbook, he knew, would not be returned before Monday or Tuesday, and his father would be out of town for the next week. From the time he slipped the bank notes into his pocket until he boarded the night train for New York, he had not known a moment's hesitation. It was not the first time Paul had steered through treacherous waters.

How astonishingly easy it had all been; here he was the thing done.

On the eighth day after his arrival in New York he found the whole affair exploited in the Pittsburgh papers, exploited with a wealth of detail which indicated that local news of a sensational nature was at low ebb. The firm of Denny & Carson announced that the boy's father had refunded the full amount of the theft and that they had no intention of prosecuting. The Cumberland minister had been interviewed, and expressed his hope of yet reclaiming the motherless lad, and his Sabbath-school teacher declared that she would spare no effort to that end. The rumor had reached Pittsburgh that the boy had been seen in a New York hotel, and his father had gone East to find him and bring him home.

His father was in New York, "stopping at some joint or other," he told himself. The memory of successive summers on the front stoop fell upon him like a weight of black water. He had not a hundred dollars left, and he knew now, more than ever, that money was everything, the wall that stood between all he loathed and all he wanted. The thing was winding itself up; he had thought of that on his first glorious day in New York, and had even provided a way to snap the thread. It lay on his dressing table now; he had got it out last night when he came blindly up from dinner, but the shiny metal hurt his eyes, and he disliked the looks of it.

He rose and moved about with a painful effort, succumbing now and again to attacks of nausea. It was the old depression exaggerated; all the world had become Cordelia Street. Yet somehow he was not afraid of anything, was absolutely calm; perhaps because he had looked into the dark corner at last and knew. It was bad enough, what he saw there, but somehow not so bad as his long fear of it had been. He

saw everything clearly now. He had a feeling that he had made the best of it, that he had lived the sort of life he was meant to live, and for half an hour he sat staring at the revolver. But he told himself that was not the way, so he went downstairs and took a cab to the ferry.

The sound of an approaching train awoke him, and he started to his feet, remembering only his resolution, and afraid lest he should be too late. He stood watching the approaching locomotive, his teeth chattering his lips drawn away from them in a frightened smile; once or twice he glanced nervously sidewise, as though he were being watched. When the right moment came, he jumped. As he fell, the folly of his haste occurred to him with merciless clearness, the vastness of what he had left undone. There flashed through his brain, clearer than ever before, the blue of Adriatic water, the yellow of Algerian sands. He felt something strike his chest, and that his body was being thrown swiftly through the air, on and on, immeasurably far and fast, while his limbs were gently relaxed. Then, because the picture making mechanism was crushed, the disturbing visions flashed into black, and Paul dropped back into the immense design of things.

REFERENCES:

1. Американский рассказ XX века. Сборник на англ. языке.- сост. Самуэльян. – М.: «Менеджер», 2000. – 304 с.
2. Избранные рассказы англо-американских авторов. – М.: Айрис-пресс, 2002. – 352 с.
3. Маккей А., Ботнер М.Т., Дж. И. Гейтс. Словарь американских идиом. – СПб.: «Лань», 1997. – 458 с.
Н.А. Самуэльян. – М: «Менеджер», 1996. – 304 с.
4. Чивер Джон. Избранная проза. Сборник на англ. языке.- сост. Н.А. Самуэльян. – М.: «Менеджер», 2000. – 304 с.
5. Advanced American Dictionary. – Longman, 2001. – 1542 p.
6. Collocations, Dictionary for Students of English. – Foreign Language Teaching and Research Press, 2001. – 887 p.
7. Concise Dictionary and Thesaurus. – Harper Collins Publishers, 2001. – 1139 p.
8. Dictionary of Contemporary English. – Pearson Education Ltd., 2003. – 1488 p.
9. Dictionary of Idioms. – Collins Cobuild, 1995. – 491p.
10. English Dictionary for Advanced Learners. – MACMILLAN, 2005. – 1692 p.
11. Essential English Dictionary. – Collins Cobuild, 1999. – 948 p.
12. Handy American Thesaurus. – Random House Roget's, 2001. – 372 p.
13. Language Activator. – Longman Group UK Ltd., 1997. – 1587 p.
14. NTC's American Idioms Dictionary. – NTC Publishing Group, 2000. – 625 p.
15. Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary of Current English. – Oxford University Press, 2003. – 1539 p.
16. Oxford Dictionary of American English. – Oxford University Press, 2005. – 828 p.
17. Oxford Dictionary of Phrase, Saying and Quotation. – Oxford University Press, 2002. – 696 p.
18. Roget's 21st Century Thesaurus. – Random House, Inc., 1999. – 788 p.
19. The All Nations English Dictionary. – All Nations Literature, 1992. – 840 p.
20. Webster's Dictionary of American English. – Random House Inc., 1997. – 868 p.

Татьяна Анатольевна Гудкина,

руководитель Языкового центра «SpeakUp», г. Благовещенск

Марина Андреевна Пирогова,

канд. филол. наук, доцент кафедры иностранных языков Амурского государственного университета

Between the Lines. Учебное пособие по домашнему чтению

Изд-во АмГУ. Усл. печ. л. 15,6